

الغصل الحراسي الأول



QR CODES Listen to Vocabulary & Audioscripts









- Punctuation
- · How to write a parapraph
- Let's remember!



### Theme 1: I discover myself

Unit 1 We plant our food

Unit 2 I want to be healthy!

Unit 3 How do I look?

Review 1

Non-fiction reader: Come to Canada!

Theme 2: Myself and others

Unit 4 Looking after our world

Unit 5 Jobs we do

Unit 6 What's the weather like?

Review 2

**Project** 

Fiction reader: Amir and His Lizard

Listening script



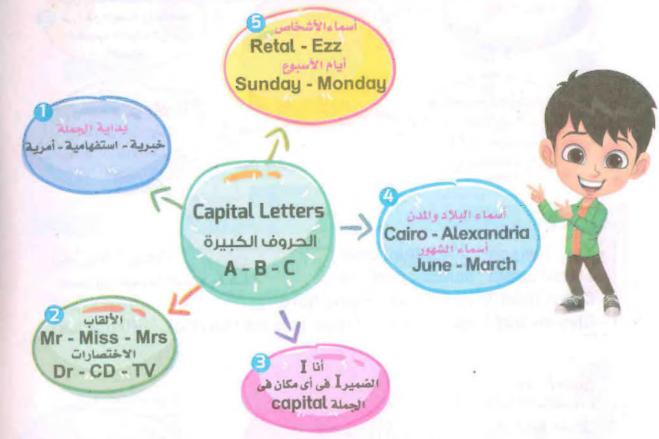
General Activities



## Punctuation







### Examples:

1. Yasin is a vet. (جملة خبرية)

2. Close your bag. (جملة أمرية )

3. Where's your umbrella? (جملة استفهامية)

4. I want some food. I'm hungry. (الضبير الضبير الضبير الضبير الضبير الضبير الضبير الضبير الصبير ال

5. We visited Giza in June. (أسماء مدن وشهور)

6. Mr Roshdi plays football on Sunday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



### Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

(Yes, / No, بعد)

- I want paper, pencils and pens.

(للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)

- Come here, Eyad. / Eyad, come here.

(اسم مخاطب)

- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (Please کلید)



### Examples:

1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)

2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية )

3. What's your name? (جملة استفهامية)

4. Hello Mustafa. (علامة تعجب)



How to write a paragraph? کیف تکتب فقرة انشائیة؟

### كيفية الاجانة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة خمس جمل عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال؛

• حتى نكُون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من،

			ترتيب الجملة	ואמו	
10 Land	فأعل		فمل		تكلمة الجملة
اسم شخص Ahmed	مکان School	شیء Car	مضارع بسيط/ مستمر is going / go / goes	ماضی بسیط / مستمر was doing / did	ظرف زمان - مکان /صفة / حال home / yesterday happy / well



### 1 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

### Healthy food

I like healthy food. I always eat vegetables and fruit. Mom cooks healthy meals. She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. We eat bananas and grapes for dessert.



# Let's remember!

Unjumble the letters to make words:

اعد ترتيب الحروف لكتابة الكلمات،







emtor \_ \_

lpouoinlt\_







aspsdowr \_ \_











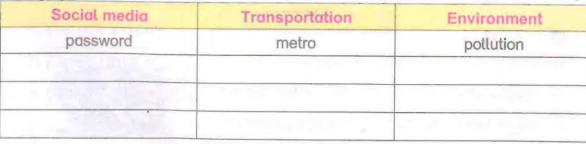


lfodo ----- etxt smeagse ----

Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say the words: اكمل الجدول بكلمات تمرين ١. ثم استمع وتأكد وقل الكلمات،





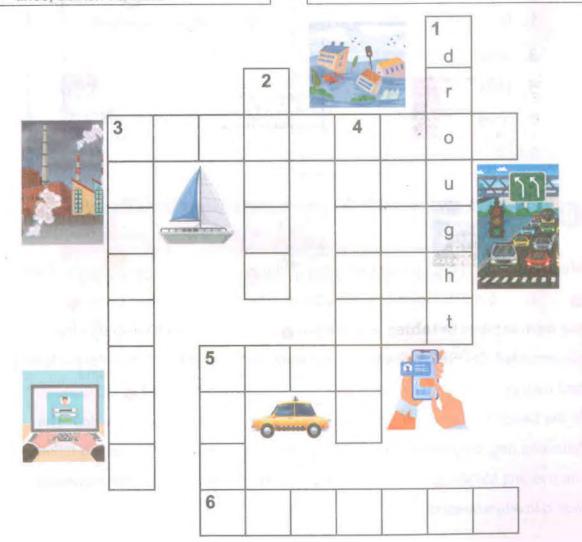


Now complete the crossword with the words in Exercise 1:

اكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بكلمات من تمرين ١:

- 1. When there isn't enough water.
- 2. When there's too much water.
- 3. The special code you need to access your computer.
- 4. Lots of cars on the road.
- 5. Public transportation that runs on lines, but isn't a train.

- 3. When there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air.
- 5. A car you can ride in the street, which someone else drives.
- 6. A small note you write to someone on your cell phone.



	ب حبك نها. هل هي مغيدة أ portation is		لات الفضلة ا	مل عن وسيلة المواص	تب ڈلاث ج
					***************************************
	past simple tens غیراننظمہ: غیراننظمہ				
1. is	was	✓ 2.	play	played	
3. swim	40(434)444444444444444444444444444444444	4.	see	440040000000000000000000000000000000000	
5. walk	424441344444444444444444444444444444444	6.	study	CS SOON EDWORDS STORY ST	
7. have	\$2025-223-223-1	8.	help	EAUNIO	
9. do	++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++	10.	go	10000000000000000000000000000000000000	
Complete	the text with the			om Exercise بافعال في الماضي ا	
Maged and Lame	are brother and si	ster, They 👩	hád a	nice weekend	. They
	oall together in the				
	the house. And M				
	Friday evening, La				
nd they 🌀	a movie. It 6	very	good. Mag	jed 🕜	***********
o the beach alor	ng the coast path ar	nd (8)	in the sec	with his dad.	The
ollowing day, the	ey went to the zoo t	ogether. They	saw lots o	of interesting a	nimals.

Write three sentences about your favorite transportation.

- Work with a partner. Answer the questions: اشترك مع زميلك. اجب عن الأسئلة:
  - 1. Did Maged and Lama like their weekend? Why / Why not?
  - 2. Who helped mom?
  - 3. Who went swimming with dad?
  - 4. Who went to the zoo?
- ( الفعل الصحيح في الجمل: Circle the correct verb in the sentences
- 1. You should / can get to the train station by 10 am to catch the train.
- 2. We must / can't plant more trees to get fresher air.
- 3. Wael should / shouldn't give his password to his friends.
- 4. Dina can / needs to buy another pen to do her homework.
- 5. Dalia should / can't put on her seat belt.
- 6. You mustn't / need to look right and left before you cross the road.
- You are buying a tablet with your parents. Complete the table with the pros and cons from the box, then add two ideas of your own:

تشترى تابلت مع والديك. اكمل الجدول بالميزات والعيوب من الإطار ثم ضف فكرتين من عندك،

small and light - can't write Word files - can read books on it the camera isn't very good - it looks cool - small screen

Buuing a tablet

مميزات Pros	ميوب Cons	
small and light	small screen	
	The state of the s	

was a lovely weekend!

1	Complete the phrases	for writing about pros and cons with
	words in the box:	كمل العبارات عن كتابة الميزات والعيوب بكلمات من الأطار كالمثال:

### also - general /conclusion - opinion - other - think - this

1. Many people	e think that tablets a	re small and light	
2. They		say	Pa
3. As well as	***************************************	7 ***	
4. But, on the	***************************************	hand	
5. In			11/11/11
		No.	
Addition		the phrases in Exercises دام العبارات بتمرین ۹ و ۱۰ ه	كتب فترة إنشائية باستخ
each dealth assessed family to blook any constitution or or	. They a	lso say	***************************************
		nk that tablets have small scr	eens.
My opinion is	S,		
In general			

Theme 1

Unit

# I discover myself

## We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا





## Objectives of the Unit هداف الوحدة

- 1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
  - " يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحثًا ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الطعام.
- 2. Understand food chains. -يقهم الطالب السلاسل الغدادية.
- 3. Listen to a conversation about favorite food.
  - " يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة حول الطعام المنشل.
- 4. Practice making suggestions with how about.
  - " يتدرب الطالب على تقديم الاقتراحات باستخدام ماذا عن.
- 5. Read a fairy tale. يقرأ الطالب قسة خيائية.
- 6. Practice saying vowel sounds. يتدرب الطالب على نطق الأصوات التحركة.
- 7. Understand decimal fractions. "يقهم الطالب الكسور العشرية.
- 8. Write a recipe.
- 9. Research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.

يجرى الطالب بحثًا ويعمل ملسق عن الطاكهة والخضروات التي تتموهي مصر.



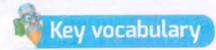


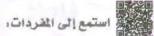


أفعال غير منتظمة



### Food and drink















carrots جزر

eggs بيض

ليمون أصفر



limes ليمون أخضر





beans فول







جوز الهند coconuts



### onions بصل

## کلمات اخری 🥻 Other words



favorite	مفضل
easy	سهل
healthy	صحى
unhealthy	غير صحى
chicken	دجاجة/ لحم دجاج
fish	سمكة/ لحم سمك

mango	لمرة مانجو
garden	حديقة
potatoes	بطاطس
fresh	طازج
market	سوق

### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present مضارع

love

collect

افعال منتظمة

Past ماض

loved collected يجمع

Irregular verbs

Present مضارع بملك have/has يأكل eat grow يزرع / يدمو sell

تصريف الأفعال

Past ماض had ate grew sold

### Study the following

What's your favorite food?

ما هو طعامك المفضارو

2 I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

- أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية ، أليس كذلك؟

3 I think it's OK to eat a little.

- اعتقد أنه من الجيد تناول القليل منها.

A It is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

- من غير الصحي تناول الكثير منها.

5 We have a mango tree in the garden.

- لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.

لدينا شجرة ليمون اخضر وشجرة ليمون اصضر. . We have a lime tree and a lemon tree

My uncle grows onions and potatoes.

. يزرع عمي البصل والبطاطس.

8 He collects fresh eggs every day.

- يجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم.

9 Sometimes he sells them at the market.

- يبيعه في بعض الأحيان في السوق.

Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

- لا تنمو ثمار الأناناس على الأشجار. إنها تنمو على الأرض.

انظر واكتب

Listen and read: Does Farida think chocolate is healthy?

استمع وأقرأ، هل تعتقد فريدة أن الشيكولاتة طعام صحى؟

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

Dina : What's your favorite food, Farida?

Farida : That's easy! It's chocolate.

: Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, Dina

is it?

Farida ! I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is

unhealthy if you eat a lot.

: What's your favorite healthy food? Dina

Farida : Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a

mango tree in the garden.

: I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree

and a lemon tree.

Farida: My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects

fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

Listen again and answer T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences: استمع مرة أخرى واجب بصح أو خطأ وصحح الجمل الخطأء

1- Farida's favorite food is chocolate.

2- Dina doesn't like chocolate.

Help your child listen and read

ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأه

3- Farida's favorite healthy food is fish.

4- Farida has a mango tree in her garden.

5- Dina has a mango tree in her garden.

Did you

6- Farida's uncle buys eggs at the market.

We grow mangoes in our garden! لا تعلم؟ علم الم

Do you grow fruit at home? Say:

- Pineapples don't grow on trees! They

grow on the ground.

beans - carrots - chocolate - coconuts - eggs



lemons - limes - onions - pineapples

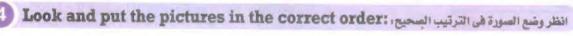




Look and write:









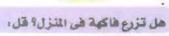












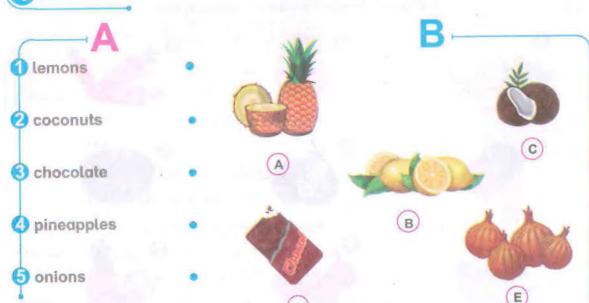


# Activities





صل:



Read and complete the dialog with the following words:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الآتية؛

### unhealthy - favorite - healthy

Fatma : What's your 1 \_\_\_\_\_food, Karma? Karma : It's mango. It is 2 Fatma: You're right. My favorite food is chocolate. Karma : I think it's 1 اقرأ واملاً الفراغات: Read and fill in the gaps:

### chickens - market - grows

the 60 .....



أعد ترتيب الكلمات: Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات

1.food - What's - favorite - your?	
2. a mango tree - garden - the - We - in - have.	
3. and - My - onions - grows - uncle - potatoes.	
4. collects - eggs - He - every day - fresh.	
5. don't - trees - <u>Pineapples</u> - on - grow.	
Functuate the following:	علامات الترقيم للآتى: ﴿
do you grow fruit, aya	



### **CLIL** Science







seeds بذور



صفوف (خطوط زراعية)



harvest שבתי



wheat قمح



نخيل البلح date palm



يرقة caterpillar



خنفساء beetle

سحلية

lizard







snake

ثعبان

1
عقاب

مكونات الطعام ingredients بقوليات legumes

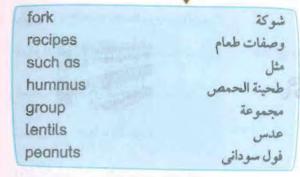
digestive system الجهاز الهضمي السلسلة الغذائية food chain

طاقة energy

producers منتجون

مستهلكون consumers مستهلك أساسي primary consumer secondary consumer مستهلك ثانوي مستهلك من الدرجة الثالثة tertiary consumer كاثنات محللة (المحللات) decomposers النظام البيثي ecosystem

### کلمات آخری 🏅 Other words



شكل صحيح
لذيذ/ شهى
بانتظام
عناصر غذائية
بداية
عشب/حشائش

### Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

Present	مضارع
belong to	تتمى إلى
check	فحف

يسقى الزرع water يحول /يتحول turn يزود/يمد provide harvest

### أفعال منتظمة Past ماض

belonged to checked watered turned provided harvested

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

	Present	مضارع
ke	ер	يحافظ على
buy		يشترى
gi	ve back	يعيد
sh	ow	يظهر أيبين

Past ماض kept bought gave back showed

### Study the following

Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many recipes such as koshari and hummus. الحمص مُكون مهم في العديد من وصفات الطعام مثل الكشري وطحينة الحمص.

2 They belong to a group of foods called legumes.

ينتمي إلى مجموعة من الأطعمة تسمى البقوليات.

3 Chickpeas are a healthy food.

الحمص غذاء صحى.

They can help to keep your digestive system working properly.

يمكن أن يساعد في الحفاظ على عمل الجهاز الهضمي بشكل صحيح.

6 After a while, the chickpeas will turn brown

سيتحول لون الحمص بعد فترة إلى اللون البني.

This is when you harvest them and collect the seeds.

ويحدث ذلك عند حصاده وجمع البنور.

The sun provides energy for plants to grow.

توفر الشمس الطاقة لنمو النياتات.

Plants and trees are called producers.

تسمى النباتات والأشجار بالمنتجين.

(2) Animals are called consumers.

تسمى الحيوانات بالستهلكين.

n Primary consumers eat plants.

يأكل المستهلكون الأساسيون النباتات.

1 Secondary consumers eat small animals and insects.

يأكل المستهلكون الثانويون الحيوانات الصفيرة والحشرات.

Tertiary consumers eat larger animals.

يأكل المستهلكون من الدرجة الثالثة الحيوانات الكبيرة.

Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem.

يميد المحللون العناصر الغذائية إلى النظام البيئي.

### Look and read:

انظرواقرأه

### From farm to fork

Ashraf grows chickpeas. Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many recipes such as koshari and hummus.

Chickpeas aren't a fruit or a vegetable. They belong to a group of foods called legumes.

Other legumes are lentils and peanuts.

Chickpeas are a healthy food. They can help to keep your digestive system working properly.

The chickpeas that you eat are the seeds of the chickpea plant. This is how you grow chickpeas and make them into delicious meals.



Now put the pictures (a-f) in the correct order (1-6):

ضع الصور في الترتيب الصحيح،



Put the seeds into bags and take them to the market.



Check the chickpea plants. Theu should look green and healthu.



Plant chickpeas in rows. Water them regularly.



Marwa puts the chickpeas in koshari and enjoys it with her familu.



Marwa buys some chickpeas and other ingredients at the market to make a delicious meal.

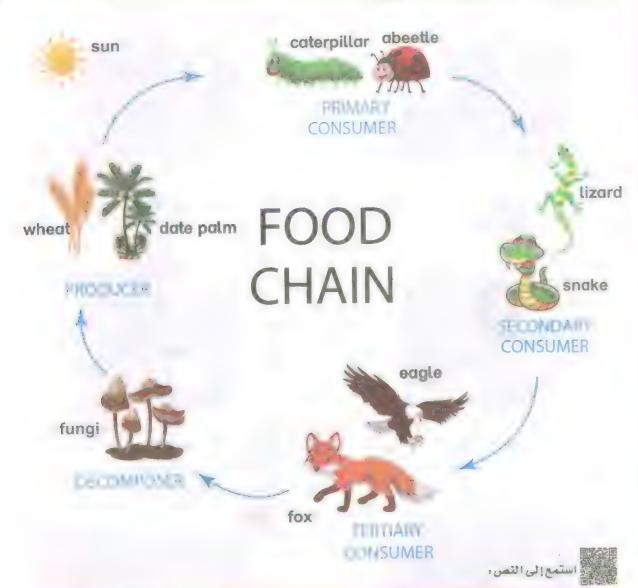


After a while, the chickpeas will turn brown. This is when you harvest them and collect the seeds



Look and read. What are consumers? What are producers?

انظر واقرأ. ما هم المستهلكون؟ ما هم المنتجون؟



The sun provides **energy** for plants to grow.

Plants and trees are called **producers**. Animals are called **consumers**.

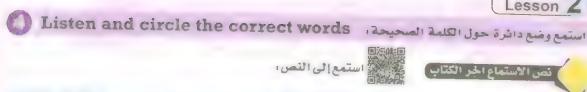
Primary consumers eat plants.

**Secondary** consumers eat small animals and insects.

Tertiary consumers eat larger animals.

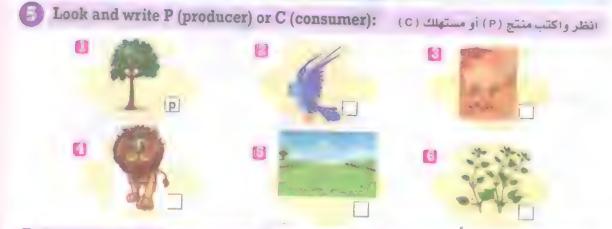
Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem

- لأحظ من الشكل أن النباتات هي المنتجة وباقي الكائنات هي المستهلكة.



This is called a 'food 1 triangle / chain'. It shows how plants and animals get their 2 energy / water. At the start of the chain, we can see 3 consumers / plants. These are called 4 producers / consumers.

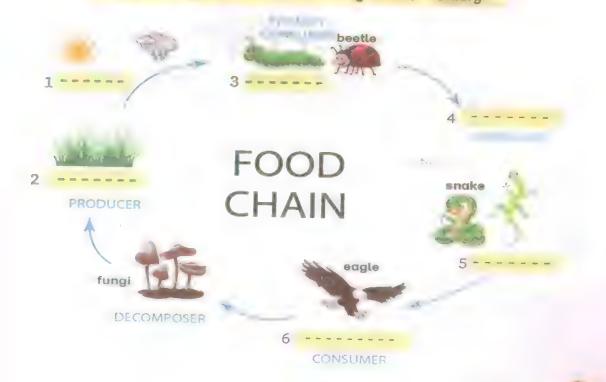
They get energy from the 5 ground / sun. Animals do not get their energy from the sun. 6 Plants / Animals eat plants or other animals for energy.



6 Complete the food chain. Use the words in the box to help you:

اكمل السلسلة الغذائية. استخدم الكلمات في الإطار لتساعدك.

caterpillar - grass - sun - secondary - lizard - tertiary



# Activities



-					
	Circle	the	odd	one	out:

المختلفة:	مملكاار	رة حوا	ىع دائ
-----------	---------	--------	--------

1	ulject	date path	hart.	chickbeds
2	Hanne	रसक्ता	suct.e	crucodile
3	Process of the list	waler	onlay	tentils
4	Pruit	veç elmiles	हरकरहू <mark>र</mark> स्ड	legumes

Choose the right answer from a, b or	2	Choose	the	right	answer	from	a,	b	or	C	
--------------------------------------	---	--------	-----	-------	--------	------	----	---	----	---	--

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة؛

- 1. What are the ...... of this meal?
- ingredients
- (b) chains

- **C** markets
- 2. Koshari has lentils, rice and
- 1 meat

**b** grass

**C** chickpeas

### Lesson 2

3. Lentils, peanuts and	d chickpeas belong to a g	roup of food c	alled
fruits	(b) legumes		etables
4. The food	shows how plants and	d animals get	their energy.
necklace	ing ring	C cha	
5. Plants are	*************		
consumers	producers	c dec	omposers
Read and fill in t	he gaps:		امّراً واملاً الفراغات:
	energy - animals - co	nsumers	
but animals are @	s plants and ()	s using the	for
food chain - e	The food chain  nds - producers - consul	. ( <u> </u>	مجاب اخر الوح
~		Bungs	for the second s

### Lesson 3

### Conjugation of varia-

### Regular verbs

Present مضارع

visit

unpack

إفعال منتظمة

Past ماض

يزور

visited unpacked

### Irregular verbs

come

buy

think

افعال غيرمنتظمة

nesent مضارع

يأتي يشعرى يفكر Past الماض came bought thought

> نستخدم للإقتراح

وظائف لغوية

My shopping list











bananas joo carrots

Lesson

جزر





کعك محلی cookies بطیخ watermelon مانجو











طماطم عاناسدا

## Migra Valde 🔏

onlinns



lovely	جميل
How about?	ماذا عن؟
How much?	کم معر؟
a good price	معر جيد/مناسب
juicy	كثير العصارة
in total	Ylar)
lucky	محظوظ
mahalabia	مهلية
of course	بالتأكيد
fridge	ثلاجة
list	فائمة
dessert	طعام التحلية

grapes	عنب
ful medames	فول مدمس
boiled egg	بيض مسلوق
yogurt	زبا <b>دی</b>
fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
fried eggs	بيض مقلي
french fries	بطاطس مقلية
cucumber	خيار
jam	مریی
honey	عسل
a balanced diet	نظام غذائي
shawerma	شاورما

## Laurence Functions How about + V + ing....?

- How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf.

- Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

💿 للسؤال بمعنى ماذا تريد نستخدم،

What would you like...?

- I would like some carrots, please.

💿 للسؤال بمعنى هل تريده

- Would you like an orange?

- Yes, please.

- No, thanks.

💿 للموافقة ،

و للرفض،

Are there + جمع ?....? ?....اسم لا يمد / اسم مفرد + Is there

- Are there any apples?

- Yes, there are.

- No, there aren't.

• وجابة في الإثبات،

🌖 إجابة في النفيء



would like

Language Functions

قواعد لغوية

### Countriule & Uncountrible neuro

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

أسماء يمكن عدها المساء يمكن عدها المساء لا يمكن عدها المساء لا يمكن عدها

أولا : الأسماء التمي يمكن عدها Countable nouns

- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها a / an أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة a / an

- الأسماء التي تعد أما أن تنتهي بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.

جمع شاف بي الأسماء المفردة التي تعد: من الأسماء المفردة التي تعد:

١- إما بإضافة 5 آخر الاسم: book → books .

٢- أو بإضافة تخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة →:

bus — buses beach — beaches
tomate — tomates glass — glasses

٣- أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (لا) وكان تبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (لا).

- أما إذا سبق حرف ( ٤ ) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.

ys (cand ) (bo ) (bo )

٤- أو بإضافة ves آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلى:

٥- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

mouse	<b>→</b>	mice	ох	<b>→</b>	oxen
man	<b>→</b>	men	woman	>	women
child	<b>→</b>	children	tooth	<b>→</b>	teeth

ثانيًا : الأسماء التي لا تعد

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل: rice / milk / chocolate / yogurt / jam / honey / soup a/an

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم. ليمونة a lemon موزة o

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف متحرك وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- الحروف المتحركة:

- an orange an apple

الما الماني بالكلمة منحرك فهنا نضع (١١١).

a - e - i - o - u

- an hour

٢ - حرف (١١) اول الكلمة له نطقان:

۱- إذا نطق مثل نطقه في كلمة (bus) هنا نضع (an) ويعامل كحرف متحرك.

- an umbrella

٧- اما إذا نطق كما ينطق الحرف (u) بالكامل في الأبجدية هنا نضع حرف (a) ويعامل حرف (u) مثل الحروف الساكنة.

- a university a uniform

some / any

- تستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتي بعد some اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I would like some apples, please.

- وتستخدم any بمعنى (أي) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال. ويأتي بعد any اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Are there any tomatoes?

- We haven't got any grapes.

### Study the following

What would you like?

ماذا تربد ؟

I would like some carrots, please.

أريد بعض الجزر، من فضلك.

Are there any tomatoes?

هل هناك أي طماطم؟

4 How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too?

ماذا عن شراء بعض الليمون والأناناس أيضًا ؟

That's all I need for now.

هذا كل ما احتاجه الأن،

I would like some potatoes and some onions, please.

أريد بعض البطاطس وبعض البصل، من فضلك.

Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.

تأكد من تناول نظام غذائي متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.

3 Why is it important to eat healthy food?

لماذا من المهم تناول طعام صحي؟

How do you make sensible food choices?

كيف تتخذ خيارات غذائية معقولة؟

### Listen and write the names:

استمع واكتب الأسماء:

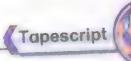
### Amal - Nada - Ibrahim - Ashraf

















### Narrator 1:

Market trader: Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely

red tomatoes?

: Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

Market trader: They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

: OK. We will have a kilogram, please. Marker trader: How about buying some carrots too?

: No, thank you. Mom

: Mom, please can we have a pineapple. Ibrahim

: Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple. Mom

Marker trader: There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

### Narrator 2:

: I really like coming to your house, Grandma. Nada

: I like it when you visit me, Nada. Grandma

: We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a plant

lemon tree.

: I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango Grandma

now?

: Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut Nada

, mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?

: Yes, I bought some in the market this morning. Grandma

Narrator 3:

: Ashraf, will you come to the market with me? Mom 2

: Yes, of course. What do we need to buy? Ashraf

: We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Mom 2

Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.

: Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite! Ashraf

: OK, are there any onions in the fridge? Mom 2

: No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions. Ashraf

Narrator 4

: OK, what do we need to get, Amal? Dad

: Mom says three lemons and some eggs. Amal

: Here are the lemons. Dad

: The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too! Amal

: Is it on Mom's list? Dad

: No, it isn't. But can I have some, please? Amal

: OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal! Dad

## the box:

Listen again. Complete the sentences with the words in استمع مرة أخرى. اكمل الجمل بالكلمات من الإطار،

chocolate - koshari - mahalabia - mango - onions - pineapple - tomatoes

1- Ibrahim and his mom buy ---- and a ---- and a

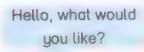
2- Nada doesn't have a \_\_\_\_\_ tree in her garden.

3- Nada wants \_ \_ \_ \_ for dessert.

4- Ashraf and his mom need to buy bread, rice, and \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

5- Ashraf wants \_ \_ \_ \_ for lunch.

6-\_\_\_\_is not on Amal's mom's list.



I would like some



Are there any tomatoes?



Would you like an orange?



How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too?



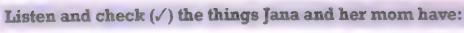
Yes, please. Can I have some grapes too?

No. thanks. That's all I need for now.

### Look and circle the correct words:

انظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

- 1. Are there any tomato / tomatoes?
- 2. I would like some / any eggs, please.
- 3. Please, can I have a / an apple?
- 4. I would like a / an pineapple and a / an orange.
- 5. Do you have a / any carrots, please?
- 6. How about buy / buying an apple, Mom?
- 7. How about buying some grapes / grape?



استمع وضع علامة ( / ) على الأشياء التي لدى جني ووالدتها،





Man : Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

Jana: Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

Mom: Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays — it isn't very healthy.

: OK, Where shall I put the cookies?

Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one - they aren't very healthy!

: OK. I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.

: Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

: Yes, it's there with the carrots.

MMM: Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

: Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!



## Unit (1) We pleat our food

Look again at the foods in Exercise 8. Are they healthy or unhealthy? Think and compare with a partner:

انظر للأطعمة التي في تمرين (٨). هل هي صحية ام غير صحية؟ فكر وقارن مع زميلك،

Read the food diaries. Order them from 1 (healthiest) to 3 (unhealthiest):

اقرأ الوجبات اليومية ورتبهم من ١ (أكثر الأطعمة صحيًا) إلى ٣ (أكثر الأطعمة غير الصحبة)،

Breakfast: ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice

a Lunch: koshari salad, an orange

Dinner: yogurt, fruit salad

Breakfast: 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese

Lunch: burger and french fries

Dinner: pizza

Breakfast: cheese and bread, cucumber, jam

Lunch: chicken, french fries, rice

Dinner: yogurt and honey, cake

### Tip!

- Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.

تأكد الله تتناول نظام غذائي صحى حتى يحصل جسدك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها. شارك زميلك. هل نظامك الفذائي صحى ام غير صحى؟ ناقش. فكر في هذه الاسلة.





Choose the rigi	ht answer from a, b or c:	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:
1.I want to eat	apple.	
a	some	<b>©</b> an
2. Amal doesn't have	onions.	
some	(D) any	o a
3. How about	chocolate?	
(i) eat	(D) eats	7 eating
4. Are there any	?	
<b>1</b> mango	(5) grapes	c pineapple
5. I would like	bread.	
<b>□</b> a	i) an	C some

3 Complete the sentences:

6. Do you have .....

أكمل الجمل:

1. I would like ......(a) orange, please.

2. Ahmed doesn't have ..... (some) apples.

potatoes?

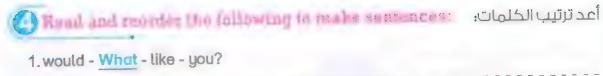
(any



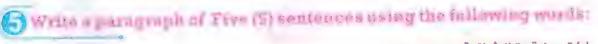
some :

## Unit Wifplant our look

- 3. Please, chop ...... (a) onion.
- 4. I would like ...... (any) rice.



- 2. there tomatoes Are any?
- 3. all That's need now for I.
- 4. some about lemons How buying?



اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



### Healthy & unhealthy food

healthy food - fruit - favorite - unhealthy - chocolate



## ضع علامات الترقيم: Punctuate the following: 1- would you like some juice, amir 2- no thanks



## Jack and the Beanstalk













beanstalk

ساق الفاصوليا

castle







قفص



grab

ينتزع / يمسك

poor	نقير
rich	غنى
special	خاص / مميز
angry	غاضب
golden	نهی

magic	سحر / سحری
terrible	فظيم
free	حر / طليق
kind	عطوف



market	سوق
COW	بقرة
price	بباور
on the way to	في الطريق إلى
cloud	سحابة
go to bed	ينام
top	قمة أ

inside suddenly	بالداخل فجاة
gold coins	عملات ذهبية
as soon as	بمجرد
axe	فأس
anymore	لميعد

### تصریف الافعال Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs	أفعال منتظمة	plantage	yesta	أفعال غير منتظمة
Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present	مضارع	Past ماض
climb يتسلق	climbed	sell	يسح	sold
count	counted	say	يقول	said
يميح / يمرخ cry	cried	get	يحصل على	got
save يقذ	saved	meet	يقابل	met bought
reach الى	reached	buy	یشتری یرمی	threw
يمك بـ / يعزع grab	grabbed	see	يرى	saw
chop يقطع	chopped	fall	يسقط	fell

### Definition

giant jua	a very, very big person
grab پمسك بـ اينتزع	to pick something up quickly
castle äcië	a very large building built a long time ago
chop يقطع	to cut something down
قفص قفص	a box in which we keep animals

### Study the following

Jack and his mother were very poor.

كان جاك ووالدته فقراء للغاية.

On the way to the market, Jack met an old man.

التقى جاك برجل عجوز في الطريق إلى السوق.

🔞 I have these special beans. دى هذه الفاصوليا المميزة.

سوف تحملك غنيا ( ۱۱۱۵ م ۱۱۱۸ م ۱۱۱۸ م ۱۱۱۸ م ۱۱۱۸ م ۱۱۸۸ م

كان حزينًا وجائعًا جدًا.

(i) The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden.

في صباح اليوم التائي ، رأى جاك شجرة (ساق) فاصوليا طويلة جدًا في الحديقة.

 Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant.

He was counting bags of gold coins.

فجأة ، رأى جاك عملاقًا كبيرًا جدًا. كان بعد أكباس عملات ذهبية.

As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe.

بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقته ، أمسك بفاسه.

(i) The grant fell on the product of a far in the

سقط العملاق على الأرض وهرب.

Jock and the mother was at many unlim

لم يعد جاك ووالدته فقراء بعد الأن.

they sold the gotton or is to imateur.

باعوا البيض الذهبي لشراء الطعام.

duck and his mother than the wife where the

عاش جاك ووالدته في سعادة دائمة.

Listen and read. What did Jack get for his cow?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا حصل جاك مقابل بيع بقرته؟

استمع إلى النص:



Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow,"said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans.

Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

يبقى / يقيم stay

Silli Jary

بلعب 100 plug

grau cales

### We plant our food



The next morning,
Jack saw a very
tall beanstalk in the
garden. It went all
the way up to the
clouds. Jack climbed
the beanstalk. At
the very top, he
saw a castle. Jack
went inside to see if
anyone needed
help.



Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the table. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen was a golden egg.



The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!"



As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!



"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?"

Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore.

They sold the golden eggs to buy food.

Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.



مانجو mango









- هناك كلمات تشترك في أحد الأصوات وتختلف في الحروف.

cake → bake rain → pain snail → tail

bean → meat gray → stay

**Look and write:** 

انظر واكتب،



### Lesson 4

Say. Then circle the odd one out:

قل ثم ضع دائرة على الكلمة الختلفة:

1. grape egg bread 2. mango egg candy

3. fish meat bean 4. lime rice cake

Read. Then listen and complete:

اقرأ ثم استمع واكمل





### نص الاستماع أخر الكتاب

Some words sound the same but have different spellings.

cake a\_e snake

Tay ai pain

Tay ay stay

- 1. Is\_\_, 'Let's pl\_\_!'
- 2. Let's b ... ke a c ... ke.
- 3. Sn \_ ls have t \_ ls.
- Write three sentences with the words in Exercise 3:

أكتب ثلاثة جمل باستخدام الكلمات التي في التمرين ٣.



**Decimal Fractions** 

الكسور العشرية

- درسنا فيما سبق الكسر حيث يتكون من بسط ومقام.

numerator + بسط - denominator مقام

- حيث إذا كان لدينا 4 تفاحات ونريد تقسيمها على ولدان (2) فإن رقم (4) هو البسط ورقم (2) هو المقام.
  - $\frac{4}{2}$  = 2 إذا نصيب كل ولد 2 تفاحة وهذا عدد صحيح.
  - تكن إذا كان لدينا تفاحتين (2) وأردنا قسمتهما على (4) أولاد:-
  - $-\frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$  أي أن نصيب كل ولد نصف تفاحة وهذا يمثل كسر وليس عدد صحيح.
- أما الكسرالعشرى فيبدأ برقم ثم علامة عشرية ثم باقى الرقم (0.30 / 0.40 / 0.70 / 32.50)

### Look, read, and remember decimal fractions:

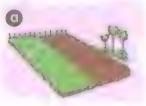
انظر واقرأ وتذكر الكسور العشرية ا

- بمكن كتابة الكسر على شكل كسر عشرى كما يلى:

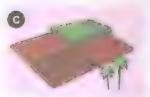
$$\frac{1}{1} = 0.20$$
  $\frac{1}{1} = 0.333$ 

### Look, read and write the names:

انظر واقرأ واكتب الاسماء







$$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$$







- Walaa planted  $\frac{1}{3}$  of her field.
- [ ] Tarek planted  $\frac{1}{2}$  of his field.
- Amir planted \_\_\_\_ of his field.
- Lubna planted \_\_\_ of her field.

### Think and write:

فكر واكتبء

- 1 I I I W 2 0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400

 $\frac{1}{3} = 1 + 3 = 0.333$ 

2

# Activities



2	Circle	the	odd	one	out:
---	--------	-----	-----	-----	------

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة،

1	ouke	gmoe	1111	roln
<b>ż</b>	story	axe	grab	throw
3	poor	rich	anary	mango
4	bean	climb	Şidi	foll

### Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jack saw a very	big person. He was a	**************************************
<b>a</b> giant	(i) cage	<b>C</b> grape
2. The bird was in:	side the	
ing ring	<b>book</b>	c cage
3. Let's	a cake.	
throw '	(b) cry	<b>6</b> bake



4. Dogs and cats have	•		
beaks	10 tails	(e) feath	er
5. A is	a very large building bui	lt a long time ago	0
castle	(5) car	c tree	
6. I always help my m	nother the	vegetables.	
climb	(i) meet	C chop	
Read and fill in	the gaps:		اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:
	rich - cage	- poor	
Jack and his mother of	lidn't have money. They	were 10	
saw a hen in a ?	Next to t	the hen was a gol	den egg. Jack took
the hen and sold the	golden eggs. He was 🛭	\$70103Q4244280826400000000000000000000000000000	at the end.
Read and reorder	r the following to ma	ke sentannes.	أعد ترتيب الكلمات:
1. his mother - were -	Jack - very - and - poor	٥	
2. saw - Jack - giant	big - a very		
3. was counting - gold	- 1112 - coins - bags - of.		
4. the golden - Theu -	eggs - sold - food - to b	uy.	
Punctuate the fo	ollowing:	للآتى:	ضع علامات الترقيم
1. what did jack get fo	r his cow		
2. let's play			

# ESSOR

## Writing

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



mix

add

pour

boil

share









محشو عقائلا

الله يزن المقادير الله طواله الاستالة الم

بخلط

یصب/پسکب ۱۳۵۰









butter nj

bake

يخبز

bell

يغلي -11

يقطع

### Other words



basbousa	بسبوسة
recipe	وصفة طعام
ingredients	مكونات الطعام
semolina	مميد
yogurt	ذبادي
sugar	سكر
melted butter	زبدة مذابة
baking powder	مسحوق الخبز
coconut	جوز هند
almonds	لوز
teaspoon = tsp	ملعقة شاي

syrup	شراب (سائل محلي)
a tablespoon = tbsp	ملعقة طعام (
lentil soup	حساء عدس
stuffed vegetables	محشي
oven	فرن
by hand	باليد
mixture	خليط
knife	مكين
diamond shape	شکل ماسی
pretty	جميل
lemon juice	عصير ليمون
saucepan	طاسة

### Conjugation of verbs

(Segular surrier Fregular verbs أفعال منتظمة أفعال غير منتظمة Present مضارع ماض Past nesent مضارع Past مادس cook cooked put يطهر put يضع make made bake يصنع يخبز baked take out took out يخرج turn on يشغل turned on cut يقطم cut weigh out يزن المقادير weighed out

### Study the following

يخلط

يضيف

يشارك

یسب / یسکب

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa.

افضل شئ احب خبزه هو البسبوسة،

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot.

mixed

added

poured

boiled

shared

أولاً ، تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه.

You should mix these ingredients by hand. يجب عليك خلط هذه المكونات باليد،

Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

ثم تضيف الزبادي وتسكب المزيج في طبق للخبز.

🗴 You can use a knill to nake diamond shapes on top of the basbous a

يمكنك استخدام السكين لعمل أشكال على شكل ماسة فوق البسبوسة.

(i) Put an almond on each diamond. ضع حبة لوز على كل ماسة.

Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

اخبر البسبوسة في الفرن للدة 30 دهيقة.

(i) Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. اغلى المزيج لدة 10 دقائق.

(9) Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. ثم نصب الشراب على اليسيوسة.

(i) Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!

قطع البسبوسة وشاركها مع عائلتك (

### Look and read. What is the recipe for?:

انظر واقرأ. عن ماذا تتحدث وصفة الطعام؟

استمع إلى المفردات،





### INGREDIENTS

2 cups semolina

1 cup yogurt

1 cup sugar

1 cup melted butter

1 tsp baking powder

1 cup coconut

almonds

Syrup

3 cup water

2 tbsp honey

### My favorite recipe

We cook lots of different things, such as tentil soup, ful medames, and stuffed vegetables. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot.

Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this!

Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa.

Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan.

Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!

### Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings

انظر إلى الكلمات المظالة بخط عريض. صلها بمعانيها.

1. stuffed b

2. weigh out

3. mix

4. pour

6. boil

7. cut

9

Choose a dish you want to make. Write the ingredients. Then write the recipe. Write 30–40 words

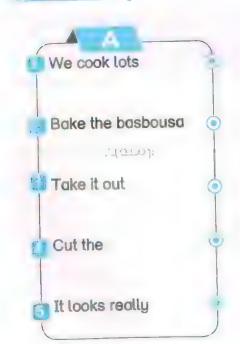
اختر الطبق الذي تريد عمله. اكتب المكونات. ثم أكتب وصفة الطعام. اكتب من ٣٠ إلى ١٠ كلمة :

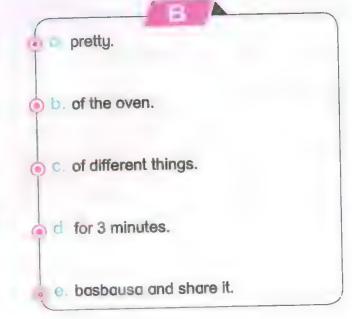
INGREDIENTS rice	Recipe
lentils	• • • • •
onions	
-	

# Activities









صل:

### Lesson 5

Choose the rig	jht answer from a, b or c:	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:	
1.I want to	basbousa.		
o bake	boil di	© turn on	
2. We have	vegetables and meat for lu	nch.	
poured	(i) weighed	<b>G</b> stuffed	
3. Mona	out the ingredients. They were	one kilogram.	
iii boiled	15 cut	© weighed	
4 the	mixture into a baking dish.		
© Pour	1 Turn on	C Read	
5. If you	two colors, you get a new one		
o boil	(i) weigh	<b>©</b> mix	
Read and reord	er the following to make sent	ences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:	
1. ingredients - the -			
2. almond - Put - dia			
3. the mixture - for - n	ninutes about - 10.		
		************	
4. your - on - hot - 111			
Punctuate the fo	llowing:	ضع علامات الترقيم:	
1- we cook lentil soup ful medames and stuffed vegetables			
2- what is the recipe for, fatma			



## Review

food

الطعام







carrots جزر



lemons ليمون أصفر



beans فول



pineapples أناناس



cookies کعك محلي



coconuts جوز الهند



onions بصل



limes

ليمون أخضر

chickpeas حمص



mangoes ماثجو



koshari کشری

### Jack and the Beanstalk



beanstalk ساق الفاصوليا



castle قلعة



giant عملاق



chop يقطع



cage قفص



grab يمسك

### Writing



stuffed محشو



weigh out يزن المقادير



mix يخلط



boil يغلى



pour يصب/يسكب



bake يخبز

### Food chain



caterpillar يرقة



beetle خنفساء



lizard سحلية



eagle عقاب



fungi فطر

ingredients	مكونات الطمام
legumes	بقولبات
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي
food chain	السلسلة الغذائية
energy	طاقة
producers	منتحدا

consumers	مستهلكون
primary consumer	مستهلك أساسي
secondary consumer	مستهلك ثانوي
tertiary consumer جة الثالثة	مستهلك من الدر
decomposers (مللات	كاثنات محللة (الم
ecosystem	النظام البثي

## -Administra 💆

poor	
rich	
special	
angry	
golden	

فقير	r
غنى	t
خاص / ا	f
غاضب	ŀ
ذهبي	

magic	سحر سحری
errible	فظيم
ree	حر / طبيق
kind	عطوف

أفعال غير سنتظية

### Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

Present Chia

	0
water	يسقى الزرع
turn	يحول إيتحول
harvest	يحصد
unpack	يفرغ
climb	يتسلق
count	يعد
сгу	يصيح / يصرخ
grab	يمسك به / ينتزع

watered
turned
harvested
unpacked
climbed
counted
cried
grabbed

افعال منتظمة

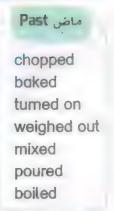
Past ماض

	52		1
	Present	مصارع	Past ماصل
	have/has	يملك	had
	eat	بأكل	ate
	grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew
l	sell	e <del>ard</del>	sold
l	buy	يشترى	bought
	give back	يعيد	gave back
1	show	ا يظهر/يسن	showed
į	meet	ا يقابل	met

MEDIL OF VERDS

## Unit (1) We plant our food.

### مصارع Present chop bake turn on weigh out يزن المقادير بخلط mix یصب / یسک pour boil







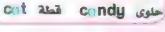
Short vowels

Long vowels

### Short a / æ /



















وظائف لغوية



How about + V + ing.....?

- How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf.

- Let's buy a bottle of milk

Are there + eas ....? ?...اسم لا بعد / اسم مفرد + Is there

- Are there any apples?

- Yes, there are.

- No, there aren't.

للسؤال بمعنى هل يوجد؟

نستخدم

للإقتراح

و إجابة في الإثبات،

🧿 إجابة في النفي:

Language Focus

قواعد لغوية

a / an

- نستخدم (٥) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

ثمرة مانجو mango تمرة مانجو

جزرة carrot

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف متحرك وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- الحروف المتحركة:

a-e-i-o-u

191

- an onion

on apple

some / anu

- تستخدم كلمة Some بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتي بعد Some اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I would like some oranges, please.

- وتستخدم any بمعنى (أي) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال . ويأتي بعد any اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Is there ony milk?

- We haven't got any nuts.





## مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

### **Answers to Paragraphs**



### The food chain

The food chain starts with plants. It ends with decomposers. Plants and trees are called producers. Animals are called consumers.

Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem.



### Lusson II

### Healthy & unhealthy food

I like healthy food. Fruit and vegetables are healthy. Bananas and pineapples are my favorite. I don't like unhealthy food. I have chocolate once a week because it isn't very healthy.



### Activity 1

### My favorite food

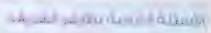
My favorite food is fish. It is a delicious meal.

I think it is healthy. I like it with rice and salad. I eat it a lot.



milk

### AZHAR EXERCISES



	A- Listening	
1 Listen and choose:		استمع وأذتر:
1. Ibrahim and his mom buy		tomatoes - vegetables)
2. In the morning, I like to drink		(water - tea - milk)
Read and complete the d	ialogue with the we	أقرأ وأكمل: المحاطا الت
	s - any - carrots	
A : Hello, what would you like?  B : I would like some to  A : Are there to  B : Yes, there are	omatoes?	
	B- Reading	
Read the following text and	answer the questions:	أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:
Marwa is my sister. She is twer other ingredients at the market to a Choose the correct answer:		aght some chickpeas and
1. Marwa is my		(aunt - sister - mother)
2. Marwa is		(15 - 20 - 30)
3. She bought some	(app	oles - nuts - chickpeas)
C-	The Reader	
Read and write (True)	or (False):	اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ: True False
Dad cooked Amir's favorite	e dish, molokhia and chic	cken.
Amir doesn't like Mom's m	olokhia.	
Choose the right answe	er from a, b. or c:	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة
1. I wouldan orange	•	
ike Like 2. Ahmed's favorite dessert is	es G	liked

15 water



chocolate



Choose the right	answer from	ع a, b, or ت الاجابة الصحيحة ع a, b, or ت	اد
1. Would you like	orange?		
™ a	L an	□ some	
2. The sun provides	for pla	nts to grow.	
energy	□ air	<u>water</u>	
3. Is there	juice?		
some	L any	an an	
4. How about	an apple, mo	m?	
1 buy	<b>buys</b>	<b>buying</b>	
5. Magdy uses	to make kos	shari.	
<b>⊡</b> seeds	cookies	C chickpeas	
Pead and match	£	يرأ وصل:	Ö
(3)			
What would	•	o producers.	
We don't have	•	o b going to the club?	
Plants are called		you like?	
Animals are called	•	o d. any grapes.	
15 How about		e consumers.	

### Read the following and answer line questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة؛

My name is Adel. I'm twelve years old. I live in Fayoum. My father is a farmer. He grows mangoes. He grows tomatoes and potatoes too. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes. We can make delicious mango juice. We can also make fruit salad and mango cakes. Mangoes are healthy food.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. Adel is	years old.	
<b>12</b>	<u>15</u> 11	<b>@</b> 10
2. Adel's father is a	Decode 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
@ doctor	<b>teacher</b>	(a) farmer

( Activity Unit

B- Answer the following questions:	
3. Where does Adel live?	
4. Are mangoes healthy food?	~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~
Read and fill in the gaps:	اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:
digestive - ingredient - healthy	
My uncle grows chickpeas. Chickpeas are importantrecipes such as koshari and hummus. Chickpeas are a	food.
1. a mango - have - w - garden - tree - in the.	
3. ground - grow - on - Pineapples - the4. is - for - What - the recipe?	
My lityorita (acco	following words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية مر
favorite - fish - delicious - healthy - rice	
🍞 Punctuate the following: פוערט:	ضع علامات الترقيم
Punctuate the following:	ر ضـَّع علامات الترقيه

Theme

Unit

## I discover myself

## want to be healthy!

أريد أن أتمتع بصحة جيدة







- Listen, read, research, and write about sports.
  - " يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الرياضات.
- 2 Talk about sports I'm good at or bad at.
  - يتحدث الطالب عن الرياضات قائلا انا جيد في أو انا سيئ في.
- Read and listen to a science fiction story. - يقرأ ويستمع الطالب إلى قصة خيال علمي.
- Learn how to say single-syllable words.
  - يتعلم الطالب كيف ينطق كلمات ذات مقطع صوتي واحد.
- Write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.
  - يكتب الطالب سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية رياضية مصرية مشهورة.
- 6 Give a presentation about how to help his / her local environment.
  - يقدم الطالب عرضاً تقديبياً عن مساعدة بيئته الحلية.



## Sports

### Key vocabulary







tennis التنس



football كرة القدم



karate

الكاراتيه



الاسكواش

رياضة الكونج فو المساس





SWMM.

السياحة



Sailina

الايجار



handball

كرة اليد

اسوأ في

عظيم

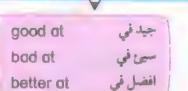
مفضل

club نادي look fun يبدو ممتعا

owesome on TV

راثع / مذهل في التليفزيون

### Adjoctives



worse at great favorite

Help your child learn about sports.

ساعد طفلك يتملم مفردات عن الرياضات.







وأنا أيضاً Me too! ماذا عن ؟ What about ....? ما الوقت؟ What time? sport ر باضة الأكثر شهرة most popular

like مثل مباراة / لعبة game فيما بعد / لاحقا later match ماراة

### Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

مضارع Present

agree

play

tru

watch

افعال منتظمة ماض Past

watched

agreed يوافق played يلعب tried يجرب

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع am / is / are يكون يفور win

Past ماض was / were won

### **Language Functions**

بشاهد

وظائف لغوية

0

لموافقة

فيما قال

المتحدث

- Me too!

وأنا أيضاً!

- So do I.

وأنا كذلك.

- See you in the club.

أراك في التادي.

لوداع

شخص نستخدم:

### Grammar

قواعد لغوية

لاحظ التالي عند القارنة:

the best better than good حربا افسل می

- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.

the worst worse than bad 1 mu 2"1 استوا مر

- I'm bad at karate but I'm worse at kung fu.

### Lesson 1

- ماذا تشاهد؟

- أحب الإسكواش،

- من في طريقه للفوز؟

### Study the following

Wind one you working?

(2) The sinus of

Whe Is winding?

She is very good at playing and include.

What sport are you good

(i) Latte go to the chair take.

3 Second to the Burneral White must popular sport in ligual? - إنها جيدة جداً في ثعبة الاسكواش. - ما هي الرياضة التي تجيدها؟

- منا نذهب الى النادي لاحقا.

- الرياضات المفضلة لدي هي السباحة والإبحار. ﴿ وَمَا مُعَالِمُ اللَّهُ مِنْ اللَّهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ السَّاعِ أ

- أراك لاحقاً في النادي.

- ما اكثر رياضة مشهورة في مصر؟

Listen and read. Number the sports in the photos in the order Seleem and Wael talk about them: استمع واقرأ ورقم الرياضات في الصور طبقاً لذكرها في النص،

### Tapescript

ستمع إلى النص: ﴿ نص الاستماع

Sileem What are you watching?

MUNIC An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini -

it's great. I love squash!

5.1 600 Me too! Who's winning?

M ce. Raneem - she's very good at playing squash.

Salerin I know. What sport are you good at?

V . Etal I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball.

What about you?

Selcen. I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love

football too.

Wasel So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and

play a game of football.

Solomin Yes, let's go to the club later.

Wrost. Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV? Survey I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?

William My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun! Sequery

Great! So what time do you want to play football?

Waet About five?

Seren Awesome - see you in the club later!

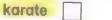












squash 1

## Ultil 2 Lwant to be twentings

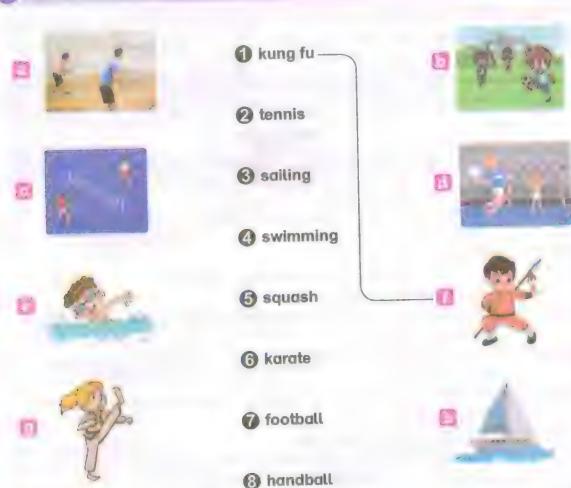
Listen again and circle the correct words:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة،

- 1 Seleem / Wael is watching a squash match.
- 2 Seleem and Wael like / don't like sport.
- 3 Wael is worse / better at football than he is at tennis.
- 4 They agree to play squash / football later.

### Look and match:

انظر وصل،



### Did you هل تعلم؟ ?know

This is bubble football. There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!

هذه كرة قدم الفقاعات. يمكنك أن تجرب العديد من الرياضات الغريبة. إنها ممتمة ويمكنها أن تحافظ على صحتك.





Read and con	aplete the dialog with th	ne following worth:
•		اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بانكلمات الآتية
	playing - great	- too
Saleem: What ar	e you watching?	
Wael: An old r	natch between Ali and Adel, i	t's • I love squash!
Saleem: Me 🗐	! Who's winning?	
Wael : Ali. He's	very good at 0	squash.
Match:		صل:
•	_ Δ	В
1 karate	• a	6 b
kung fu	©	
<b>S</b> squash	•	c)
handball	•	
5 sailing	<ul><li>d</li></ul>	е ,
Choose the ri	ght answer from a, b or	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة؛
1. What are you	?	
<b>a</b> watch	<b>b</b> watches	<b>@</b> watching
2. What sport are	you good?	
on on	10 at	<b>G</b> up

3. She is bad at handball but she is ..... at tennis.

worse

taller taller

**C** older

4. I love sailing. It ...

sees

looks

**C** hears

Help your child deal with such questions.

سلتِه طَفَاتِكُ فِي التَعامِلُ مِع مِثْلُ هَذِهِ الأَسْتَلَادُ.



## Unit 2 Heart to be healthy!

(A Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. bad - playing - I'm - at - tennis.

2. watching - you - What - are?

3.go - Let's - club - to - later - the.

4. favorites - swimming - are - My - sailing - and.

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following من خمس جمل عن:



### Your favorite sport

favorite - club - friends - practice - great



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. seleem and wael like sport

2. what sports do we have in egypt

LESSON

## I'm good at ...



climb trees ىتسلق الأشجار



jump يقفز



do jigsaws يقوم بتركيب الصور المقطعة



walk across the dancer یمشی عبر الصحراء



يطهو يطبخ



يرسم

### Other words



قصيدة شعرية اللغة الفرنسية اللغة العربية لعبة التابكوندو شطرنج

أفعال منتظمة

tidied

do karate يلمب الكاراتيه make dinner يُمد طعام العشاء singing العناء team فريق table tennis

### Conjugation of verbs .........

### Regular verbs

poem

French

Arabic

chess

tidy

taekwondo

climb يتسلق climbed cooked يطهو cooked walk يمشي walked jump practice يمارس practice

### irregular verba

### افعال غير منتظمة

Prese	ent مصارع	Pas
do	يفعل/ يمارس	did
draw	يرسم	drev
read	يقرأ	read
make	يُعد (طعام)	mad
sing	يغني	sang
write	، يكتب	wrot
speak	يتحدث	spok

## want to be health)



قواعد لغوية

🗸 💿 نستخدم التعبيرات الأتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخص ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله،

good at/ great at/ good at when bad at اسم (n) / (v + ing) / (n) اسم (m) > + bad at سيئ هي

- I'm good at playing football / I'm good at football.
  - يمكن استخدام أي من الصيفتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).
- My sister is great at writing poems.
- They are bad at tennis.

للحظ ّ عند إضافة (ing) تفعل منتهي بـ (٠) غير منطوقة تحذف (٥) ونضع (ing)



make making

write writing

لكن للحظ: ثم يحدث حرف (e) لأنه منطوق. 🖚 see

ئستخدم (Why) للسؤال عن السيب.



- Why are you good at table tennis?

because

سب فتنحة

- I'm good at table tennis because I can move fast.



نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة

but & and

- أي أنها تضيف للمعنى:
- I play tennis and basketball.
- I like fruit and vegetables.
- و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (ئكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.
- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.
- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

Complete the sentences:

اكمل الجمل:

1 I'm good at playing (play) football.

2 My sister is very good at ...... (write) poems.

3 Sami's bad at ..... (speak) French!

What are you good/great/bad at? Write three sentences about you in your notebook with the phrases in the box:

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن الإشياء التي تجيدها أو لا تجيدها بإستخدام الكلمات الأتية،

do - karate - draw - help - my - mom/dad make - dinner - play - chess - play tennis - read

- I'm good at reading Arabic, but I'm bad at making dinner.

Look and write. Use good at, bad at, great at, and the phrases in the box: انظر واكمل الحمل مستخدما الكلمات التالية ،

climb trees - cook - do jigsaws - draw - jump - walk across the desert











		K.	
6	£	191 -	-
	e oraș e	V var 181 denne detti Menner	

1. Monkeys	
2. Cats	

3. Camels

5. Reem \_\_\_\_\_

# THE DISTRICT OF THE PROPERTY.



- 2 Aser is my brother. He's ...... at playing tennis, and he's bad at ...... me in the kitchen!
- 3 My sister's name is Salma. She's ...... good at doing math. She's at tidying her room!
- Talk to your classmates. Find out which sport most people are ...:
  - 1 good at.Why?

2 bad at. Why?

I'm
good at table
tennis because I can
move fast. What sport
are you good at?



I'm
good at football
because I practice a lot.
What sport are you
bad at?



# Adding and subtracting decimals جمع وطرح الأعداد المشرية

عند معنى أو منرج الأعداد العشرية تعامل مع الرقم مثل الأعداد الكاملة (بدون علامة عشرية) ولكن
 اجعل العلامة العشرية في الرقمين سواء كان جمع أو طرح تحت بعضهما تماماً كما في المثال:

 2.367
 10.512

 8.145
 8.145

 10.512
 2.367

يجب أن يتوافق موضع الملامة المشرية في الرقم الجديد مع وضعه في الأرقام الأصلية كما في المثال:

7.2 + 2.4 9.6

 إذا كان ناتج جمع ما بعد العلامة المشرية في كلا الرقمين أكبر من الواحد فيضاف إلى الرقم الذي يسبق العلامة المشرية كالآتي:

« لاحظ أنه بشكل عام عند الجمع أو الطرح نبدأ بآخر رقم في العدد الأول مع آخر رقم في العدد الثاني،

# Unit 2 Semiliate for Hon

دانياً الطرح، ادرس الأمثلة التالية جيداً،

15.23 60.678 3.2 50.356 5.3 3.77 10.322

#### Circle the correct answers:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة السحيحة،

- 7.983 + 5.432 = (13.415) 134.15
- 9.076 + 8.894 = 1.7970 / 17.970
- 60.678 50.356 = 103.220 / 10.322
- 129.675 6.231 = 123.444 / 12.3444

#### Solve the problems:

حل المسائل الأثية ،

- 1 If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees?
- 2 Jihan ran 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran?...
- 3 Taher bought 2 watermelons. One weighs 2.657 kg and the other weighs 3.205 kg. Find:
  - the total weight of both watermelons.
  - 11 the weight difference between the two watermelons.

sv:	m Le Line		
Choose the right an	swer fro	ma, boi c:	عتر الاجابة الصديدة:
1. She is good at	footb	all.	
play	(5) plays		<b>©</b> playing
2. They are great	helpii	ng their mom.	
at	i) of		<b>©</b> on
3. I'm good at reading Arab	oic,	I'm bad	
and and	(b) but		C because
4. I'm good at table tennis	Ser Description for a series of	I can move	_
or	(b) but		© because
5. Monkeys are good at		trees.	5000000
(i) climb	(b) climbin		c climbs
Match:			. الله
A			
I'm good		o a. handbal	L
I'm good at reading		o b. great at	walking across the desert.
What are		<ul><li>c. at playin</li></ul>	g tennis.
Camels are	•	od. you bad	at?
She is good at	Ó	e. but I'm b	ad at doing jigsaws.
Read and fill in the g	aps:		اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:
but	- bac	d - helpii	ng
My sister Esraa is a good	girl. She is	good at	her mom in the
chen. She is very e			

at making shawerma.

# Unit 2 I want to be readed

Complete the sent-uces.

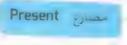
أكمل الحمل:

- 1. He is great at ......(play) tennis.
- 2. Ali's bad ...... (of) speaking French.
- 3. I'm good at ...... (make) dinner.
- 4. They are bad at ......(do) karate.
- 5. I'm very good at football ...... (because) I'm very bad at sailing.
- أعد ترتيب الكلمات: . : « . Read and reorder the following to make senter:
- 1. are Which your sports favorites?
- 2. is He good football at.
- 3. are bad What you at?
- 4. bad making He is dinner at.
- Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1. what about you, amr
- 2. they re good at tennis

Regular verbs



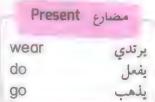
kick practice rhyme

Past ماض kicked practiced mymed





أفعال غير منتظمة العالمة المتعالمة



Sports places and equipment



LESSON

football pitch ملعب كرة القدم



tennis court ملعب التنس



استمع إلى المفردات،

swimming pool حمام السباحة



karate suit بدلة الكاراتيه





million ruckuts swimming gogolie-مضارب الاسكواش نظارة السياحة



tarmis half كرة التنس

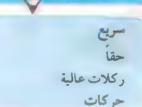
## Other word & GESTER

fast

really

moves

high kicks



أفعال منتظمة

summer different walls go swimming

مختلف حوائط/ جدران يذهب للسباحة

#### Conjugation of verbs (Leaderland)

Past ماض wore did

went

#### I want to be nearling.

## Study the following

(i) Kicking a balt on a pitch is my favorite thing

- الشيُّ المُفضل بالنسبة لي هو ركل الكرة داخل ملعب كرة القدم.

2 I like high kicks best.

"أفضل شيُّ أحبه هو الركلات العالية.

(3) I love this sport because I'm very good at it.

" احب هذه الرياضة لأننى اجيدها.

I think it's an awesome sport.

- أعتقد انها رياضة رائعة.

(3) I feel like a different person.

- أشعر الني شخص مختلف.

Look and write. Then listen and check:

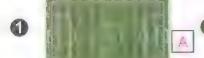
انظر واكتب ثم استمع وتأكدر







rackets boots court tennis goggles karate







football ....Diff.11.....

tennis







swimming

football

ball



Listen and match the speakers (A-E) to the photos in Exercise 1 (1-8). Some speakers match more than one photo

استمع وصل المتحدثين بالصور في تمرين رقم (١).



ستمع إلى النص الأستماع



Narrator: A

Boy 1: I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

Narrator: B

Girl 1: Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

Narrator: C

Boy 2: I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

Narrator: D

Girl 2: I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

Narrator: E

Boy 3: I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

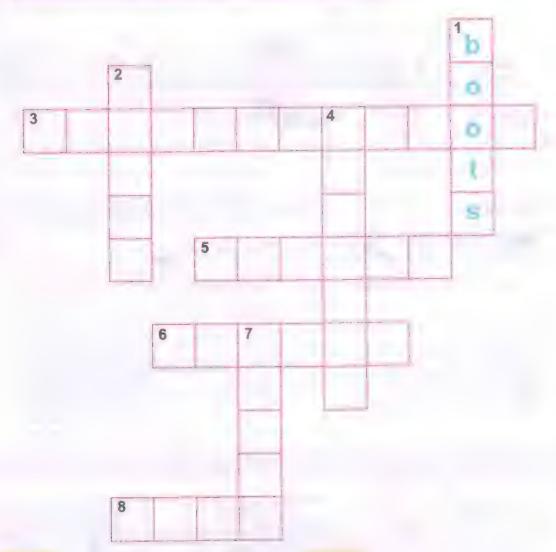
B Listen again and complete the sentences: استمع مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة ،
1. I love my sport —kicking a ball on ais my favorite thing.
2. Being in apool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.
3. I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like highbest.
4. You have to play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small
and you move very fast.
5. I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have

in the park and I go there with my friends.

## 0

#### Complete the crossword with the sports words:

اكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات المتعلقة بالرياضات،

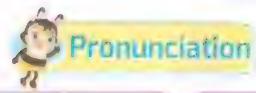


#### Down

- 1. This is what I wear to play football.
- 2. This is where I play football.
- 4. This is what I wear to go swimming.
- 7. This is where I play tennis.

#### Across

- 3. This is where I go swimming.
- 5. This is when I do high kicks. It rhymes with "you" and " two."
- 6. This is what I use to play squash.
- 8. This is what I wear to do karate.





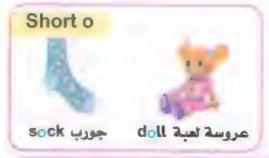












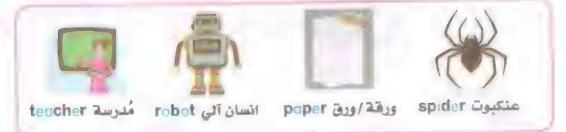








# Units 2 1 -- Avenue to handless



#### لدرس في هذا الدرس عدد الأصوات داخل الكلمات ،

- تنقسم الأصوات في الكلمات على حسب الحروف المتحركة والساكنة داخل الكلمة مثل؛
- و تبدأ الكلمة بالصوت 5 ثم بعدها صوت حرف 0 المتحرك وحرفي ck معاً صوت واحد فتصبح الكلمة عبارة عن ثلاث أصوات.
  - دلائة أسوات f-i-sh كلمة
    - الحروف المجمعة مع بعضها وتعطي صوتاً واحداً:
- sh ش fi الله خارث this / toom
- ch تش ajiair igh tong, light
- ck 4 sock
- و أي حرفان مضاعفان لنفس الحرف ينطقا صوت واحد.
- صوت واحد glass --- s عموت واحد

#### الاحظ

- كلمة Successful هنا حرف الأول ينطق مثل الأنه جاء بعده حرف والحرف الثاني ينطق مثل حرف الأن بعده حرف ال
- نطق حرف و مثل حرف ا إذا جاء بعده الله الله وينطق المع باقي الحروف.
- إذا جاء حرف @ في نهاية الكلمة وسبقه حرف ساكن لا ينطق مثل كلمة وCOne . rose
  - لا ينطق حرف W وبعده حرف ا مثل write .
  - لا ينطق حرف n إذا جاء بعده ألا مثل know .

#### Lesson 3

و خدرس أيضاً هي هذا الدرس الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة هي النطق مثل:

المعلق (hat egg) sit (pot cup قصيرة النطق)

ونحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد غالباً

rose (light pain tea two

تحتوي على صوتين متحركين

#### Syllables - Syllables

الكلمات في اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتي يحتوي على صوت متحرك كما يلي:

## Count the syllables.





- کلمة / ch ps / تحتوى على مقطع صوتى واحد حيث بها صوت short i.
  - کلمة ( chicken ) تحتوی علی مقطعین صوتیین حیث بها صوتین متحرکین.

## لاحظ

- إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهى بذلك تعد مقطع صوتى واحد.
- فمثلا كلمة meat بها حرفين متحركين (a/e) لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.
  - ﴿ في كلمة make تنتهى الكلمة بحرف الكنه هنا الا يعتبر صوت متحرك الأنه غير منطوق أصالاً.
- (e) آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف (L) فهنا تعد كمقطع صوتى كما في كلمة وكان قبلها حرف
- الاحظ صوت حرف (y) يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة Сјtу تحتوى على مقطعين صوتين.

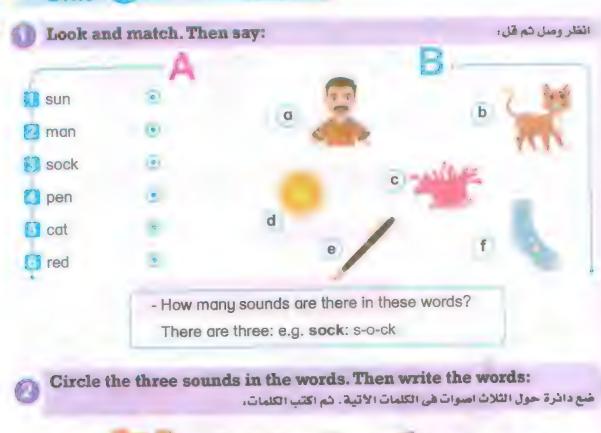
							Lesson	
Listen	and ch	eck (🗸)	the words	with lor	ng vowe	sounds		
			حركة ممتدة،	بها اصوات مت	كلمات التي ب	الا) على ال	تمع وضع علامة	
			10	تمع إلى النم		آخر الكتاب	نص الاستماع	

				إلى النص:	استمع ا	تماع آخر الكتاب	نص الاس
	1 сту		2	swim		3 bat	
	<b>4</b> so		6	fuel		6 make	
	7 cone		8	cube		9 feet	
6	Match	the syllables to 1	make		Then listen نمات. ثم استمع وا		صل المقاطع الد
	0		spi -			<b>per</b>	
	2		tea			bot .	
	3		ro			@ der	
	4		pa			C cher	
6	Listen a	and write the nur words			bles next to وتية بجوار الكلم		
						لى النص:	استمع ا
	baby	delete	rob	ot	window [	racket	

				إلى النص:	
baby	delete	robot	window	racket	
human	spider	tiger	paper	final	

pollute

hotel

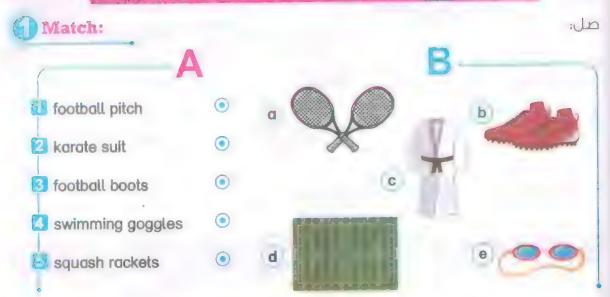




ten and say. Then liste	en and write:	ستمع وقل. ثم استمع واكتب:
<b>1</b>	استمع إلى النص:	نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب
<b>4</b>	<b>6</b>	6

teacher

# Activities



Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملاً الفراغات؛

I love sports very much. I love • a ball on a pitch. Football is my sport. I love this sport • I'm very good at it.

kicking

How many sounds are there in these words:

favorite

اكتب عدد المقاطع الصوتية للكلمات الاتية كما بالمثال:

because

fish	3	5 baby	030030000000000000000000000000000000000
e neck	Justa pot tract and the cold an	6 tiger	b0+++4+11+0++11+11+1++++++++++++++++++++
<b>3</b> sun	\$pabgib/as/+sb21456454545	7 paper	02040000000000000000000000
<b>4</b> doll		8 robot	**************************************

Lesson 3

(1) Choose the righ	it answer from a, b or	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:		
1. When I play footbo	all, I wear football			
goggles	rackets	<b>©</b> boots		
2. I like squash very I	much. I play it with my	**************************************		
rocket	(b) racket	<b>G</b> goggles		
3. I play tennis with r	rackets and tennis	**************		
goggles	() balls	c pitches		
4. A football	is a place where I pla	y football.		
a shirt	house	© pitch		
5. I like to wear swim	nming when I	go swimming.		
rackets	goggles	<b>©</b> balls		
6. I wear a	when I do karate.			
o boots	<b>5</b> suit	c racket		
Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following worth				
•		اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جما		
	The swimming poo	مجاب اخر الوحدة		
goggles - swimming pool - love - sports - weekend				
		10 V and 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10		
6 Punctuate the	following:	ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:		
1.i practice football o	n friday			
2. what s your favorite	sport			

## An Awful Nightmare!

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



	air '
ı	air freshener
	emissions

الهواء معطر الهواء انبعاثات

shade صوبة زراعية greenhouse nightmare كابوس

#### Adjectives

toxic

acid

horrible

dangerous



خطير حمضي مفزع awful clean dirtu

فظيع نظيف قذر - منسخ

asleep كثير (للعدد) manu much

كثير (للكمية)



له رائحة افضا smell better حركة المرور/ المركبات في حركة المرور troffic plastic بلاستيك dream

مشكلة problem breathing work hard يعمل بجد get ready planet كوكب

#### تصریف الافعال Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Past ماض

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

breathe look after protect deligation

استخدام س

wait

call

breathed stayed looked after protected waited called

#### Irregular verbs

#### Present مضارع

drive يقطع cut down يجب أن have to سقط fall يحافظ على keep

## Past مادن

drove cut down had to fell kept

#### Language focus

قواعدلغوية



نستخدم الصفة \* 100 للتحدث عن شيَّ أو صفة زائدة عن الحد بحيث لا يمكن تحملها .

- There are too many emissions from cars.

ويعدها الأسم لبيان السبب.

نستخدم ۱۱ س

because of بسبب

- I didn't go to school because of the bad weather.

toxic very bad to eat or breathe.

air freshener a way of making the air smell cleaner. معطر الهواء

emissions تاثلونا gases from cars or factories.

out of the sun. shade

کابوس nightmare a bad dream.

greenhouse صوبة زراعية

a glass building used for growing plants.

acid has chemicals in it.

#### Study the following

The air is black and toxic.

- الهواء اسود وسام·

We use air freshener to make the air smell better

- نستخدم معطر الجو لنجعل رائحة الهواء افضل.

(a) There are too many cars and too much traffic

- يوجد الكثير من السيارات والكثير من المركبات في حركة المرور،

There are too many emissions from cars

وجد الكثير من الانبعاثات الخارجة من السيارات،

(1) It's dangerous for children's lungs.

- هذا خطير على رئة الاطفال·

- كان كابوس فظيع٠

(1) It was lovely to have rain after a very hot day.

- من الممتع أن تمطر السماء بعد يوم حار،

The rain is acid and when it falls we can't go out

- المطر حمضي وعندما يسقط لا تستطيع الخروج،

(a) Vice and brown trade from the - نحصل على الفاكهة من الصوب الزراعية فقط·

(C) a company of the company of the

We can drive our car less, use our bike more.

" نستطيع استخدام سياراتنا اقل ونستخدم الدراجات اكثر



# Unit 2 I won't to te menting

Listen and read:

استمع و اقرأ.

#### **Tapescript**



سمع إلى النص: (نص الاستماع



ا-سام ٢- معطر المواء

۳- انتماثات

ع-التنفس

٥- حمصي

٧- صوت زراعية

۸- کابوس فظیی

٦- طل

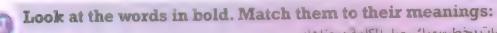
I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic(1). Inside the house we use air fresheners (2) to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside - there are too many cars and too much traffic. There are too many emissions (3) from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school

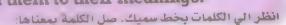


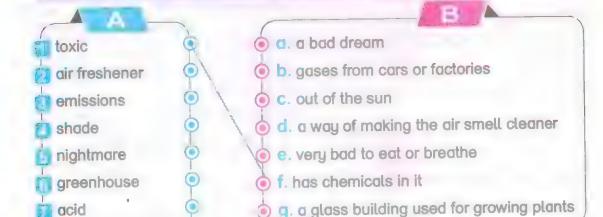
because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing(4).

I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends - the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. In the old days, it was lovely to have rain after a very hot day, but now the rain is acid(5) and when it falls we can't go out. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty. Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade (6) on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses(7) and we can't sit outside any more.

But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare(8)! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun. We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!







# Activities

Read and match:			اقرأ وصل:
(A)		1	(3)
A greenhouse is	•	the air is black	and toxic.
1 A nightmare	•	b. a way of making	g the air smell cleaner.
I sit under	•	the shade of thi	is tree.
I can't breathe,	•	od is a bad dream	
D The air freshener is		a glass building	g used for growing plants.
Read and fill in t	he gaps:		اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:
	practice	dirty plasti	c
Every summer, w	e go to the	e beach and swim in	the sea. Swimming is our
			's too much •
in it. It's O			
Choose the right	angway	from a hor c:	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة: *
5 Choose the right	answer 1	Monte e, D or c.	السر الدباب السبي
1. A is a	bad drean	n.	
nightmare	( sh	nade	© planet
2. We can't go to school	l because	the rair	n.
<b>o</b> ff	lo of		© with
3. Emissions are	fr	om cars or factories.	
glasses	( <b>1</b> ) go		6 buildings
4. The child is	in be	ed and has a bad dred	om.
asleep	1 dangerous		1 bad
5. I sit under the	O	f this tree.	
share	(D) sh	nade	<b>G</b> shape
6. Cairo is a very busy	city. It has	too much	2 500 K # P B
• traffic	D pl	lanets	© suns

Help your child deal with such questions.

علقد طملك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاستثلة.

# I want to be healthy!

1. going - We're - to - today - the - park.

2. emissions - are - There - too - many.

3. planet - We - need - look after - to - our.

4. grass - The - was - green.

5. can't - W - go - outside.

#### Spunctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

- 1. what do you think of the story, adel
- 2. we can t sit outside any more

# Writing - A Sports Biography

## Key vocabulary



champion	يطل
athlete	لاعب العاب رياضي
medal	ميدالية
pollution	تلوث
biography	سيرة ذاتية (عن شخص)

competitor	منافس - خصم
the future	المستقبل
award	جائزة - منحة
water bodies	المسطحات الماثية

# Min white 🗸 🥄 🥾



aralympic	Games		
جات الخاصة)	(لذوي الاحتيا	الاوليمبية	الألعاب

Olympic Games (Olympics)

الألعاب الاوليميية

training فخر - شرف honor

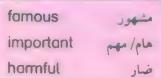
prize جائزة bronze medal ميدالية برونزية

special moment لحظة خاصة

organisms الكاثنات الحية wastewater مياه الصرف

gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية
sportsperson	شخص رياضي
achievement	انجاز
special needs	احتياجات خاصة
taek wondo	رياضة التابكوندو
chemicals	مواد كيميائية
at the age of	في سن،
practicing hard	يثلرب بجد
flag	علم
toilet	مرحاض (حمام)
running water	المياه الجارية

#### Falletilve



kind
special
successful

interesting





# Hall 2 I went to be 1-100

#### Conjugation of verbe

Regular	verbs	أفعال منتظمة
Present	مضارع	Past ماض
compete	يتنافس	competed
сапу	يحمل	carried
kili	يقتل	killed
destroy	ا يُدمر	destroyed
cause	بسبسا	caused

irregular	veros	أقعال غير منتظمة
Present	ومصارع	Past ماس
win	يفوز	won
can	يستطيع	could
become	يصبح	became
lose	ينخسر	lost
hold	يحمل	held
throw	يرمى	threw

breamil or works

#### How to write a biography:

avoid

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية؛

- لكتابة السيرة الذاتية عن شخص رياضي (مثلاً) نستخدم بعض المصطلحات والعبارات للتعريف بالشخص الرياضى:

1- He / She was born on + זוניה ואוצני.

avoided

4- He / She is successful because ...... لنعتبر شخص ناجع لأنه

قاز- هازت ب الله على الله على

Helia (In Maron / es et as ...

هو بالإضافة إلى / علاوة على ذلك / بالإضافة إلى ذلك......

- وهيما يلي نموذج نسيرة ذاتية (Biography) عن شخص رياضي (Mohamed Salah)

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player. He was born on June 15, 1992. He began playing football when he was young. He is a successful sportsperson because he trained a lot to win awards. He also helps poor people in his, village.

## Study the following

ሰ Hedaya Malak is a tem ilis Eri pli in La Asanda player.

- هدانة ملاك هي لأعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة.

2 This is a great ----

- إنه فخر (شرف) عظيم،

Sne is one of the transport of the transport of the same of the same of the olympic Games.

- هي واحدة من الاثنين اللذين حملا علم مصر في الألعاب الأوليمبية.

A She began practicing task nondered in case or seven

- بدأت ممارسة رياضة التايكوندو وهي في السابعة من عمرها،

**5** She won many important where

- حصلت على جوائز عديدة.

6 She won the bronze medal.

- حصلت على الميدالية البرونزية.

She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs.

- ساعدت لاعبة مغربية من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

8 What does the future hold for Hedaya?

- ماذا يحمل المستقبل لهداية 9

(9) Water pollution can kill organisms.

- يمكن تتلوث المياه أن يقتل الكائنات الحية.

Dirty water can make children and old people ill.

- يمكن أن تحمل المياه الملوثة الأطفال وكبار السن مرضى.

Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

- لا تُلقى القمامة في أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.

اقرأ وتأكد من إجابتك.

استمع إلى النص:



- 1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo(1) player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games(2) in 2021. This is a great honor(3),
- 2. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. Hedaya won many important awards. She won the promze medal<sup>(4)</sup> at the Rio Olympics<sup>(5)</sup> in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.
- 3. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete(6) with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete(7) against, so Hedaya became her competitor(8) and lost. Raja could therefore(9) win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.
- 4. What does the future hold for Hedaya? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!



ا- رياصة التابكوندو ٢- الالعاب الاوليميية يطوكنو

- ۳- سرف/فجر
- ٤- ميدالية بروترية
- ٥- الالعاب الاوليمنية
  - ٦ رياضي معربي
  - ٧- سوس
    - ۸- میافس
  - 9- بعد دلك

2	Read	again	and	answer	the	questions	
	920 mas				4	•	

	1 -					[ pair	970
سئلة:	. 5	100	-450	la.	احد ک	0 14	Sec. 100
- Chapterine	1 40		-	- 2		-	-

1. What is her sport?	-								
2. Why is she important?		-	-	-	-			-	
3. What's the most important award she won?			-		 -	-	 -	-	-
4. What does she want for the future?			-		 _	-	 	-	-
							_		

- Read again, and match the paragraphs (1-4) to the headings (a-d) اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم صل الفقرات من (١-٤) بر (q - d)
- a. What Hedaya will do next 4
- b. Who the famous sportsperson is.
- c. Something else she is famous for
- d. Further information about her sport and her achievements

	Write notes for a sports biography. Use	phrases 1-6	to help you.
U	Write notes for a sports biography. Use Try to use the words in the box:	2 لشخص رياضي.	نبذة عن سيرة ذاتي

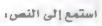
athlete - award - compete - future - medals - sports - training

Mohamed Salah was born on June 15, 1992.



#### Work in groups. Discuss and research:

How can we make our cities less polluted? How can we make our air, water, and soil cleaner? اعمل في مجموعات. ناقش وابحث:





#### Water pollution

When hurmful chemicals(1) go into water bodies(2) like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms(s) that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause(4) animals to lose their homes and change their habitats(5).





#### Causes(6)

- · Wastewater from sinks. toilets(9), and showers
- Wastewater and chemicals from factories
- Wastewater from agricultural land (10) and cities into rivers



#### Effects(7)

- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.
- Polluted water destrous(11) wildlife in rivers.

#### Solutions(8)

- Save as much water as possible.
- · Take shorter showers.
- Avoid(12) running water (13)
- Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

#### Arabic Meaning

- ا- مواد كيميائية ضارة
- ۱- مسطحات مائية
  - ٣- كائنات حية
  - ٤-يسبب
  - ٥- بىئات
  - ٦-الأسباب
  - ٧-التأثيرات
  - ٨-الحلول 9- مراحيض
  - ا- أراض زراعية
  - ١١- يدمر
  - ۱۲- پتجنب

  - ١٣- المياه الجارية



•	LIC U		
Choose the	e right answ	er from a, b or c:	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:
1. Hedaya Ma	lak is a / an	Egyptian taek	wondo player.
o toxic		o famous	c angry
2. Hedaya	bor	n on April 21, 1993.	
g were	12 2 2 19	ore are	C was
		the age of 14.	
o at	it was	on on	C of
4. Hedaya wo	n the bronze	0200065055545000000000000000000000000000	
@ metal	A	5 medal	c racket
5. I play squas	sh with Amr, An	nr is my	٠
competito	or	<b>award</b>	c medal
Read and	fill in the g	aps:	اقرأ واملأ الفراغات؛
	W	on - prizes - taekwondo	
Hedaya Mala	k was horn on	April 21, 1993, She bega	n practicing 0
			ige of 14. Hedaya 💁
many important			
		Howing to make sente	ences: عد ترتيب الكلمات:
	•		
1. practicing -	She - hard - is	•	
2 holped al	Morocogn - Shy	- with - athlete - special	needs.
	violoccuii - <u>siii</u>		
	edaya - a very		
J. 13 - KIII Q - 116	days a roig	F-1-1-1	

Lessons 58.6

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

#### -Hodaya Malak

was born - awards - future - training - medal

	9

<b>5</b> Punctuate	the fol	lowing:
--------------------	---------	---------

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1.	nedaya matak is a farnous ptager
2.	what s the most important award she won

4. does - What - want - she - the - future - for?



#### **Sports**



tennis squash



التنس



football كرة القدم



karate الكاراتيه



kung fu الكونج فو



swimming السباحة



الاسكواش

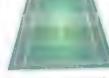
sailing الابحار



handball كرة اليد



football pitch ملعب كرة القدم



tennis court ملعب التنس



swimming pool حمام السباحة



karate suit بدلة الكاراتيه



football boots حذاء كرة القدم



squash rackets مضارب الاسكواش



swimming goggles نظارة السياحة



#### Different activities



cook يطهو ايطيخ

gir freshener

emissions

champion

awesome



draw يرسم



climb trees يتسلق الأشجار

الهواء

امذهل



jump يقفز



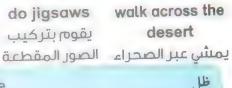
يقوم بتركيب



desert

معطر	1
انبعاث	
بطل	
راثع ا	

shade greenho nightma competit



	ظل
ouse	صوبة زراعية
ire	كابوس
tor	منافس - خصم

#### Review Unit 2

لاعب - رياضي	biography	سيرة ذاتبة (عن شخص)
ميدالية	the future	المستقبل
تلوث	award	جائزة – منحة

# Adjuctivot 🗸 🖘

athlete

medal

pollution



worse at	أسوأ دي
toxic	مام
dangerous	حضر
acid	حمصې
horrible	مفزع
asleep	ماتم

يوافق

يلعب

يجرب

يشاهد

يتسلق

يطهو

يتنافس

يقتل

يُلمر

يسبب

يتجنب

يمارس

یر کل

يحمي

يمكث-يبقي

famous	مشهور
awful	فظيع
clean	نظیف
dirty	قذر - منسخ
harmful	ضار
successful	ناجح

#### Conjugation of verbs JUSTIN COLUMN

Past ماص

agreed

played

watched

climbed

cooked

killed

competed

destroyed

caused

avoided

practiced

kicked

stayed

protected

tried

#### Regular verbs

Present مضارع

agree

watch

climb

cook

kill

compete

destroy

cause

avoid

kick

stay

protect

practice

play

try



tennis	ball
التنس	کرۃ

#### propertiar verbs أفعال سندية

n 19	an ar	VCI	17 -

مة	افعال غير منتظ
r	Past ماض

1,030	
am / is / a	يكون are
win	يفوز
do	يفعل/ يمارس
draw	يرسم
make	يُعد (طعام)
sing	يغني
can	يستطيع
become	يصبح
lose	يخسر
hold	يحمل

throw

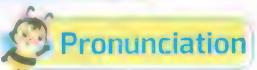
speak

was / were
won
did
drew
made
sang
could
became
lost
held
threw
spoke

يرمى

يتحدث

























#### Grammar

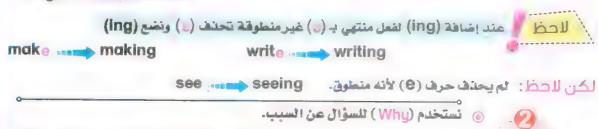
#### قواعدلغوية

· نستخدم التمبيرات الأتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخمن ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله:



good at/ s great at/ bad at

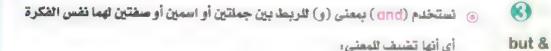
- I'm good at playing football / I'm good at football.
  - يمكن استخدام أي من الصيفتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).
- My sister is great at writing poems.
- They are bad at tennis.



- Why are you good at table tennis?



- I'm good at table tennis because I can move fast.



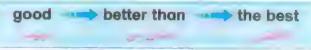
- I play tennis and basketball. - I like fruit and vegetables.

و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (ثكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة
 و أخرى منفية.

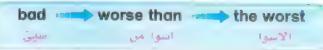
- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.
- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

لاحظ التالي عند المقارنة:

and



- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.



- I'm bad at karate but I'm worse at kung fu.



## مهارات الختابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

#### Answers to Paragraphs

#### Lossini

My favorite sport

1 like sports. My favorite sport is karate. I do karate in the club. I practice it with my friends. I'm great at doing karate.



#### Lescon I

#### The swimming pool

I like swimming. I swim in the swimming pool. I wear goggles to protect my eyes. I like sports. I swim at the weekend.



#### Lessons 5 & 6

#### Hedaya Malak

Hedaya Malak was born on April 12, 1993. She won many awards. She is training very hard. She really wants to win a gold medal. She is a famous taekwondo player.



#### Activity - Unit 2

#### A sportsperson

My friend is a sportsperson. He loves sports very much.

He practices sports in the club. He wins many awards. He trains hard to win a lot of prizes in the future.



#### AZHAR EXERCISES

2. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian

15 handball

o football



الاستله الحاصة بالأرهر الشريف

- 0	
A- Listening  Listen and choose:	استمع واختر:
1. Monkeys are good at climbing	(walls - trees - houses)
	otball - Handball - Taekwondo)
B- Language Funct  Read and complete the dialogue with	
squash - match - spo	ort
What are you watching?	
B : An old	
A: What are you good at?	
: I'm good at playing	
C- Reading	
Read the following text and answer the que	قرأ وأحب عن الأسئلة:      estions:
my friends at the club. I'm bad at playing handbal hoose the correct answer:	l.
1. Osama is good at playing	(handball - karate - football)
2. Osama likes making	(cakes - salad - cheese)
3. Osama is bad at playing	(football - handball - tennis)
D- The Reader	
Read and write (True) or (False):	قرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:
	True False
Ata Danaam in Amida ta sahar	Mark 4000000000000000000000000000000000000
Mr Bassam is Amir's teacher.	
Amir's poster is about his pet lizard.	
E- Usage	
Choose the right answer from a, b,	or c: الاجابة الصحيحة:
1.I'm goodplaying football.	
o at	C in

player.

c taekwondo

# ON UNIT

# Activity



( call		,	*
Choose the right a	nswer from a	i, b or c: dajar	غتر الاجابة الد
1. He is good at	tennis.		
play	<b>b</b> playing	<b>c</b> plays	
2. I'm good at football	I pr	actice a lot.	
<b>but</b>	<b>1</b> to	<b>©</b> because	
3. Wael is	at squash than	Ali.	
worst	better	<b>c</b> good	
4. We play football on th	e football	0640A6310\$88330040006	
pitch	<b>o</b> rackets	C pool	
Read and match:			فرأ وصل:
A		В	
A nightmare is		<ul> <li>a glass building used</li> </ul>	I for growing

1 A nightmare is
2 Hedaya Malak was born
3 She is practicing

1 a glass building used for growing plants.

1 b what I wear when I go swimming.

© c. on April 21, 1993.

e d a bad dream.

• hard to win the gold medal.

#### Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة؛

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. People like it very much. People play football on pitches. It is one of the most important games in the Olympic Games since 1900. People play football by foot only, but the goalkeeper خارس المرمى is the only player who can hold the ball with his / her hands. People play football in two teams. Each team consists of eleven players. The winner is the team with players who score the most goals.

#### A- Choose the correct answer:

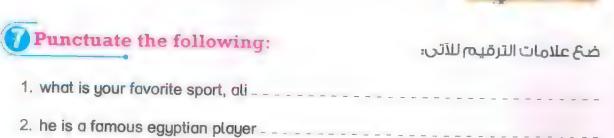
Swimming goggles are

5 A greenhouse is

1. People play footba	ll on			
pools	pitches	<b>©</b> farms		
2. A football team consists ofplayers.				
<b>1</b> 2	<b>1</b> 3	<b>©</b> 11		



B- Answer the following questions:
1. Who can hold the ball with his / her hands?  2. What's the most popular sport in the world?
اقرأ واملاً الفراغات: : Read and fill in the gaps:
fresheners - toxic - emissions
The air is very bad. I can't breathe. The air is black and
Inside the house we use air to try to make the air smell better.
We can't go outside. There are too many cars and too much traffic. There are
too many • from cars.
أعد ترتيب الكلمات: Read and reorder the following to make sentences:
1. are - jumping - Cats - at - good.
2. won - Important - Hedaya - awards - many.
3. she - Why - is - important?
4. great - Mazin - is - doing - at - jigsaws.
(6) Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:
A sportsperson
sports - practice - future - win - hard - awards
Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:



Theme



# I discover myself

# How do I look?









- Listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.
  - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الملابس المختلفة.
- Listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة عن الأمتعة الستخدمة للسفر في إجازة .
- 3 Learn about the geography of Egypt.
  - يتعلم الطالب عن جغرافية مصر.
- 4. Practice using the infinitive of purpose.
  - " يتدرب الطالب على استخدام مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الغرض.
- 5. Read a traditional folktale.
- يقرأ الطالب حكاية شعبية قديمة .
- 6. Learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/ and / Id/.
  - يتعلم الطالب تعلق الأطعال المنتهية بـ (ed) هي الماضي البسيطة.
- 7. Multiply multi-digit numbers.
- " يقوم الطالب بعملية شرب الأرقام الكبيرة .
- 8. Write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.
  - يكتب الطالب وصف عن الملابس المفضلة باستخدام الصفات.
- 9. Research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.





# Our trip to Al Fayoum









T-shirt تی شیرت



sunglasses نظارة شمس



swimming shorts شورت سیاحة (مایوه)



scarf كوفية (شال)



بلوڤر sweater





حذاء رياضي sineakers



necklace عقد



pajamas بيحامة



بالطو

coat





spotted منقط



مخطط (مقلم) striped خطوط (تقلیم) stripes



pack ر يفسا قسقه السفر ا



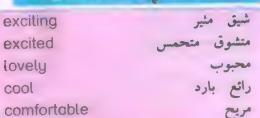
#### 3 How do I look? Unit

#### Culu - murk 👸

رحلة قصيرة trip شنطة سفر suitcase فترة طويلة ages حمام سباحة pool لؤلؤ pearl

ذهب/ ذهبي gold come on مركز تسوق (مول) shopping mall walk around

#### Admictives



طبيعي natural من صنع الانسان man -made عم / خال uncle عمة/ خالة aunt

#### Conjugation of verbs

صفات

#### Regular verbs

Pres	ent مضارع ص
need	بحتاج
remem	يتذكر ber
pack	يُعبى (شنط سفر)
visit	يزور

ماض Past needed remembered packed visited

افعال منتظمة

#### irregular verbs

	-	
	Present	مضارع
to	ake	يأخذ
S	ee	یری
W	/ear	يرتدى
g	ive	يعطى
k	now	يعرف

Past ماض took SOW wore gave knew

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### **Language** Functions

وظائف لغوية

التعبيرعن الاقتراح نستخدم،

ماذا عن / ما رأيك في ......؟ ?اسم What about + noun

-What about my best galabeya?

مصدر الفمل .inf + ينبغي أن should طاعل

-You should pack a sweater.

Giving advice التعسرعن النصيحة

Suggestion.

الإقتراح

#### Grammar

قواعدلغوية

#### نصب (د. ر. int) 4 (it) \* منش اكن الطبعائر ا

simple tense ( و يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

**Future** المستقبل التسيط

Lesson 1

- I will take my gold necklace.
- She'll pack her suitcases tomorrow.

وهي النفي نستخدم:

مصدر القعل + will not (= won't) + inf. مصدر القعل

- You won't need your coat.

وهي السؤال بـ (هل.... ؟) نستخدم،

# inf....? + فاعل + inf....?

- Will I need my scarf?
- اجابة مختصرة مثبتة ، Yes, you will

اجابة مختصرة منفية ، No, you won't

Keywords: الكلمات الدائلة:

تستخدم الكلمات الأتية مع زمن المستقبل البسيط:

في المستقبل (week - year - month) - in the future) القادم tomorrow عدا

- و تستخدم the one لمدم تكرار الاسم القرد،
  - the one /
- -I'll need my T-shirt. I'll take the one that my grandma gave me.
  - ونستخدم the ones ثمرار الاسم الجمع:
    - the ones
- -He'll need these pajamas. He'll buy the ones with the stripes.

## Study the following

1 We need to pack our suitcases for our hotiday tomorrow

- نحتاج أن نعبي شنط السفر للإحازة غدا.
- We haven't seen them for ages

- " لم نرهم منذ فترة طويلة.
- 3 You need to wear something comfortable on your feet.
  - تحتاج أن ترتدي شيء مريح في قدميك.

4 What else do I need?

- ماذا أحتاج أيضا؟

(3) It will be very sunny.

- سيكون الطقس مشمس حدًا،

- (6) It can be cool in the evenings.
- " يمكن أن يكون الطقس بارد في الامسيات.
- **111 Take the ones with the stripes.**
- " سوف أخذ البيجامة التي بها خطوط (مقلمة).

8 They're really cool!

- إنها رائعة حقا.



ستمع وقل:

Lesson (1

Listen and read. What are Mom and Aser doing?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا تفعل الام واسر ؟

استمع إلى النص،



Mann: Aser, we need to pack our sultcases for our holiday tomorrow.

Aser: It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

Aser: OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

Mom: Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

Aser: Will I need a coat and a scarf?

No, Aser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

Aser: OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

Mom: You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

Aser: What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

Mom: No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

Aser: Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool!

### Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع مرة اخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة ،

1. Who is Aser going to visit?

He's going to visit Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak.

- 2. Is Aser going somewhere hot or cold? How do you know?
- 3. Why does Aser need a sweater?
- 4. Does Aser take his galabeya?
- 5. Which pajamas does Aser pack?

Listen and say:

استمع إلى النص

Tapescript دص الاستماع

1- T-shirt 2- sunglasses

3- swimming shorts

4- scarf

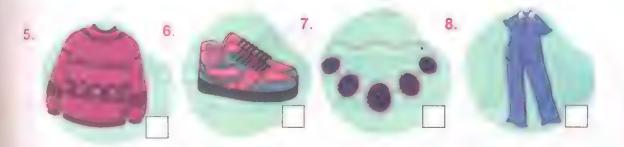
5- sweater

6-sneakers

7- necklace

8- pajamas





Read the dialog in Exercise 1 again. Check ( $\checkmark$ ) the items in Exercise 3 that Aser packs.

اقرأ المحادثة في تمرين (١) مرة أخرى وضع علامة ( $\sqrt{}$ ) على صور الأشياء التي وضعها "آسر" في شنطة السفر في التمرين السابق.

#### How do I look? Unit

Listen, number and draw:

استمع ورقم وارسم:

spotted

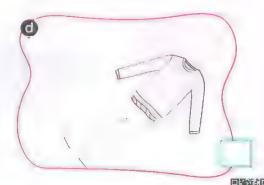


striped مخطط (مقلم)















- 1- Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought striped pajamas.
- 2- Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.
- 3- Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.
- 4- Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

#### Did you know?

#### هل كنت تعلم؟

- Cotton grows in the Nile Delta. Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.
  - ينمو القطن في دلتا النيل. يعتقد كثير من الناس أن القطن المصرى هو افضل قطن في العالم.



Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

#### need - packing - shorts

: What are you doing, Hisham? Samu

: I'm O\_\_\_\_\_ my suitcase for my holiday. Hisham

Samu : Where are you going on holiday?

Hisham : I'm going to Al Fayoum to visit Uncle Sherif.

: What will you @\_\_\_\_\_ to take in your suitcase? Samy

Hisham : I'll take my sunglasses, T-shirts and my swimming 6

















#### Read and match:



- Which pajamas
- 2 Will I need
- 3 It will be What else do
- 5 He'll pack

- - o very sunny. b. I need?
    - © C. does Aser pack?
      - d. his suitcase tomorrow.
      - ⊕ a coat and a scarf?

اقرأ وصل:

# Unit 3 How do I look?

Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- 1. We'll .....our sneakers.
- took

take

- **C** taking
- 2. You need ..... to go to the pool.
- pajamas
- **b** sweaters
- c swimming shorts
- 3. ..... about my best sweater?
- What

**10** Which

- C Who
- 4. A: ..... I need my scarf? B: No, you won't.
- Do

15 Will

- **G** Have
- 5. Women wear ..... around their necks.
- o coats

- sweaters
- c necklaces
- أعد ترتيب الكلمات: Read and reorder the following to make sentences:
  - 1. cool They're really.

  - 2. pack my I'll T-shirt favorite.
  - 3. bought some He pajamas striped.
  - 4. took She umbrella a spotted.

  - 5. grows Delta Cotton Nile in the.
- 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. why do you need your necklace, laila

2. hoda went to the shopping mall last friday

\_\_\_\_\_

Lesson

# Geography

## Key vocabulary



Nile Delta دلتاالنیل



Fayoum Depression منخفض الفيوم

Features

مظاهر طبيعية



استمع إلى المفردات:

Nile Valley وادى النيل



mountain چىل



glacier کتلة جليدية



river



sand dunes کثبان رملیة



فيضان flood



صحراء desert



غابة استوائية rainforest



شلال waterfall

sculpture تمثال منحوت fossils حغريات خصب (للتربة) canal قناة مائية ترعة

river banks soil erosion wind erosion low ضفاف النهر تآكل (تعرية) النربة تآكل (تعرية) بفعل الرياح منخفض

#### New do I look? Unit

#### Places



مدينة القاهرة Cairo دولة ليبيا Libya البحر الأحمر the Red Sea

Sudan دولة السودان نهر النيل the Nile the Mediterranean Sea البحر الأبيض المتوسط

#### کلمات اخری 🌷 Other words



Past ماض

country بلد دولة من خلال through الشمال the north الجنوب the south الغرب the west capital عاصمة modern citu مدينة حديثة زهرة اللوتس lotus flower oasis (oases) واحة (واحات) whales حيتان ساق (نبات) stem

فرع (للنهر) branch الساحل الشرقي east coast Lower Equot look like مشاهد راثمة amazing sights until home humans محاصيل crops huge towards

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### Irregular verbs

Present

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### nesent مضارع

#### flow flowed يتدفق (للنهر) changed change يتغير reached reach يصل stretch بمثل stretched connected to connect to يربط ب destroyed destrou يلمر

#### أفعال منتظمة

/	المحال مضار	Past	ماض	
---	-------------	------	-----	--

يجرى (للنهر) run grow يزرع يقع (في مكان) lie تهب (الرياح) blow spread out

ran arew lau blew spread out

flow	يتدفق	the way water moves
fertile	خصبة	good land to grow plants and crops
river bank	ضفةالنهر	the land along the side of a river
canal	ترعة	a waterway made by humans

soil erosion تأكل (تعرية) الترية

when water, wind, or other things break down the soil, and take the soil particles away

wind erosion تأكل (تعربة) بفعل الرياح

when the wind moves the soil from one place to another. an causes change or damage to the soil

## Study the following

1 Equal is a very beautiful country. - مصر بلد جميلة جدًا، 2 China is a modern oity in Lower Egypt.

القاهرة مدينة حديثة في مصر السفلي. R The Nite runs through the country.

يجري نهر النيل خلال البلد. - منخفض الفيوم مكان خاص جدًا . . . . Papin عالات الجاء الجام special place . . . .

in the Payours Outpression is in the Western Desert of Equit.

- يقع منخفض الفيوم في الصحراء الغربية في مصر،

(a) It is connected to the falle River by the Bahr Youssef Canal

- إنه مرتبط بنهر النيل عن طريق ترعة بحر يوسف. The Mile Valley is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River.

- وادى النيل منطقة من الأرض على ضفاف نهر النيل.

(3) Many people say that the Nite Valley is like a lotus flower

-- يقول كثير من الناس أن وادى النيل مثل زهرة اللوتس. (9) This were made by the wind

- هم من صنع الرياح. there weren't any sculptures millions of years ago.

- لم يكن هناك تماثيل منحوتة منذ ملايين السنين.

#### Which of these natural features can you find in Egypt?

أي من مظاهر الطبيعة الأتية تجدها في مصر؟









mountain

alacier

river

flood









rainforest

desert

waterfall

sand dunes

Read and match:

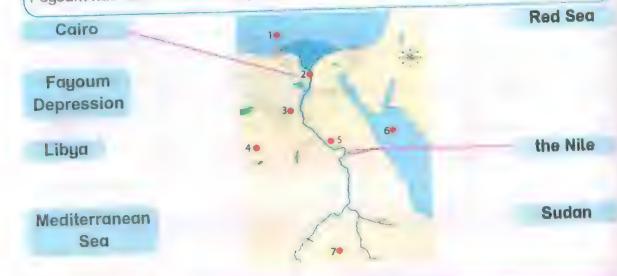
اقرأ وصل:



Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea(1) in the north. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is a modern city in Lower Egypt (2). Libya lies to the west of Egypt and Sudan lies to the south. The Red Sea lies on Egypt's east coast. The Façoum Denresson (3) is a very special place, as it's an oasis with the biggest waterfalls in Egypt. It has the huge Wadi El Rayan park(4), which is home to many birds and animals. There are also fossils of whales(5) Fayoum has lakes and amazing sights all in one place!

أ- البحر الابيض المتوسط

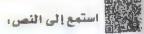
- ٢- مصر السفلي ٣- متخفض الفيوم
- ٤- حديقة وادى الريان
- ٥- حقريات للحبيان
- (بقایا حیتان)



Read. Match the places in the box to the photos:

القرأ وصل الأماكن في القائمة بالصور،

Nile Delta - Fayoum Depression - Nile Valley





ا-دلتاالنيل

آ- بمتد

٣- فرعين

The Nile Delta(1) is in Lower Egypt. About 20 kilometers north of Cairo, the Nile River spreads out(2) into two branches(3). These two branches flow towards the Mediterranean Sea. The Nile Delta is the fertile soil between the two branches of the Nile. It stretches from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a triangle.

Lesson 2

The Nile Valley(4) is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River. It is very good for growing crops like wheat, dates, and beans. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a lotus flower(5) - the river and the river banks are the stem of the flower, and the Nile Delta is the flower.

٤- وادى النيل ە- ز هرة اللوتس ٦- الصحراء الغربية ٧- تعرية بفعل الرياح ٨- ترعة بحريوسف

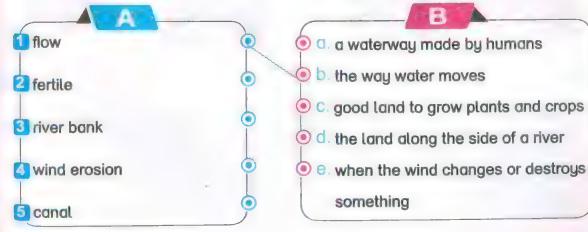
The Fayoum Depression is in the Western Desert(6) of Egypt. It is an area of land that is low below sea level. It was made by wind erosion(7) about 1.8 million years ago. It is connected to the Nile River by the Bahr Youssef canal(8). This means there is water here, so it is a green place where many plants grow.







Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings: انظر إلى الكلمات في القطعة السابقة وصلها بمعانيها،





# Unit 3 How do I look?

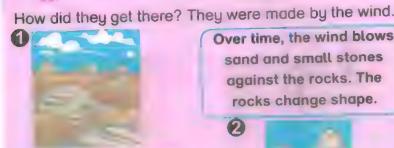
Look and read. What made the sculptures? انظر واقرأ. من صنع التماثيل النحوتة







ا- صحراء مصر البيضاء In Egypt's White Desert (1), you can see some amazing sculptures (2). ۲- تماثیل منحوتة



Wind erosion

Over time, the wind blows sand and small stones against the rocks. The rocks change shape.



There weren't any sculptures millions of years ago.

After many years, the wind and sand turn the rocks into beautiful sculptures.

Look at the photos. Do you think they happened because of wind erosion (W) or soil erosion (S)? Write W or S, then compare with a partner.

انظر إلى الصور الأتية هل تمتقد ما حدث لهم بفعل تمرية الرياح أو تمرية التربة؟ اكتب (W) أو (S) ثم قارن مع زميلك،











Think The Aswan High Dam was built to control the Nile flooding every year. Why do you think it was needed? Think about what happens to the land, the people, and the crops in a flood.

لقد تم بناء السد العالى في أسوان ليتحكم في فيضان نهر النيل كل عام. فكر فيما سيحدث للأرض والناس والمحاصيل في الفيضان.

# Activities



Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

- 11 The Aswan High Dam was
- The Fayoum Depression is
- 3 A canal is
- ( The Nile Delta is in
- 5 There weren't any

- o . in the Western Desert of Egypt.
- b. a waterway made by humans.
- C. Lower Egypt.
- d. sculptures millions of years ago.
- e. built to control the Nile flooding.

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملاً الغراغات:

#### Nile - capital - modern

We live in Cairo. It's the o \_\_\_\_\_ of Egypt. It's a o \_\_\_\_ city in Lower Egypt. There's the 0 ............................... It runs through the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea in the north.

سلعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاستلة. . . Help your child deal with such questions

#### 3 How do I look? Unit

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

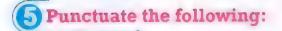
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن؛



#### Your country (Egypt)

beautiful - the Nile - capital - Lower Egypt - love





ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. is egypt a very beautiful country

2. you can see sculptures in Egypt's White Desert

جلابية

a striped dress

فبيبتان مخطط (مقلم)

Costuma

زی خاص

Lesson

# My favorite clothes

# Key vocabulary





SHEATINGS.

أكمام

a spotted dress

فستان منقط

GIGWI

تاج



Dockets جيوب









gloves قَفَازَاتُ (جوانتي)



استمع إلى المفردات،

ىدلة



belt حزام

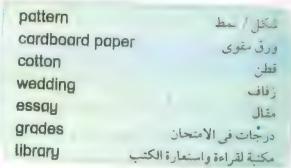


robe رداء/ثوب (روب)



-djactives





traditional	تقليدى قديم
hidden	خفي/ غير ظاهر
colorful	عمى الألوان زاهى الألوان كثير الألوان زاهى الألوان
useful	مفید

popular sunburned special

#### 3) How do I tack? Unit

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

studied

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

# مضارع Present

Past ماض celebrated celebrate borrowed borrow استلف protected protect traveled يسافر travel called يتصل / ينادي call

Present Present tell یحصل علی/ یصاب بـ get leave يغادر / يترك یشتری buy sleep

Past ماض told

got left bought slept

## **Language Functions**

يذاكر يدرس

وظائف لغوية

وثلرده

#### Can you + inf. (مصدر القمل)....?

- -Can you help me?
- -Can you give me some information?

-Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

-Oh, sure.

study

request طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب

Polite

#### be / get / look + عضه.

- -The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!
- ™ Theyre hidden.

- It looks really cool to wear.

نستخدم الصفة بعد بعض الأفعال (be - get -- look)

#### Grammar

قواعدلغوية

- نستخدم (to + inf.) للتعبيرعن الفرض من فعل شيء ما.
- -I need a pen to write my homework.
- وفي حالة السؤال عن الغرض نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام (الذا...؟ ....؟ (Why...? الم

- -Why did Samy go to town? Samy went to town to have new sneakers.
- -Why did Tarek make a suit?
- -Torek made a suit to wear to a wedding.

لاحظ للإجابة عن السؤال بـ(Why...?) نستخدم (because or to)،

.To + inf (مصدر الفعل) للتعبيرعن الغرض

#### Listen and read. Fares is talking to his friend Tomas on social media. What does Tomas want to know about?

استمع واقرأ. فارس يتكلم مع صديقه توماس عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. ماذا يريد توماس أن يعرف؟

استمع إلى النص:



Tomas	: Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school	project	about	Egyptian
	clothing. Can you give me some information?			001

Fares: Hi, Tomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

Tomas: Well, what do you usually wear?

Fares: I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

Tomas: Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?

Fares : Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.

Tomas: Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

Fares: Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!

Tomas: Are there pockets?

Fares: Yes! But they're hidden - you can't see them from the outside.

Tomas: Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

Fares: We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

Tomas: Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

0	and the second second		
U	Read again and answer T	True) or F (False): (it	تي او مي ۾ آخي ي واحسان (ميج) آو (خو

<ol> <li>Tomas wants to buy some Egyptian clothes.</li> </ol>	
2. Fares isn't wearing a galabeya today.	

3. Galabeyas are usually made from cotton.

4. Galabeyas are always white.

5. Galabeyas don't have pockets.







اشترك مع زميلك. تحدث عن ملابسك المفضلة أو الملابس التي ترتديها للاحتفال. أكتب ثلاث جمل في كراستك،

- I've got a striped dress. I love it! I wear it to celebrate Sham El-Nessim. شم النسيم
- My favorite thing is my sweater. It's blue and it has a pocket. I wear it when I travel.

Look and complete:

belt - costume - crown - gloves - pockets - spotted

1. Marwa is wearing a \_\_\_\_\_ dress with a \_\_\_\_. There are two \_\_\_\_\_.

on her head. She has white ..... on her hands.



Work with a partner. Read and answer:

اشترك مع زميلك وأجب،

- اقرأ الإجابات والاسئلة الآتية حول استخدام .to + inf للتعبير عن الفرض من فعل شيء.
- 1. Sameh went to town to buy new sneakers.
  - Why did Sameh go to town?
- 2. Nessma went to the kitchen to make a cake.
  - Why did Nessma go to the kitchen?
- 3. Tarek made a suit to wear to a wedding.
  - Why did Tarek make a suit?

Lesson 3

Circle the correct words:

نبع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. I went to the library portrow. ( 'a borrow

a book.

- 2. Injy used a pen to write / write her essay.
- 3. Sherif bought a new suitcase take / to take on holiday.
- 4. Malak wears her sunglasses to protect / protect her eyes.

Read and match:

اقرأ وصلء

I bought some sunglasses

We went to the park

Hazem studied hard

Basma went to the shop

They went to the library

a. to play with our friends.

- b. to buy some bread.
- c. to finish their homework.
- od. to wear on holiday.
- e. to get good grades.

Listen and number:

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

: I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.

: I got some cardboard paper to make my poster. Boy 1

: I searched on the internet to find the information for my homework. Boy 2

: I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm. Girl 2













# Unit 3 how on the st

Look and make sentences	in the past simple t	o express purpose:
	البسيط للتعبيرعن الغرض:	انظر واكتب جمل في زمن الماضي
1.I / go / to my bedroom / sleep		
2. Nayera / leave / the party / cato	ch her train	
3. Adam / call / Younis / ask for h		
4. Tarek / buy / a racket / play ter	nnis	
D a late the contenges w	ith many ideas:	اكما الحما الأترة وأوي م
Complete the sentences w		
1. I went into town		
1. I went into town		
1. I went into town     2. My teacher used a green pen.		
1. I went into town     2. My teacher used a green pen		
1. I went into town     2. My teacher used a green pen     3. Basel opened his bag		
1. I went into town     2. My teacher used a green pen     3. Basel opened his bag		
1. I went into town     2. My teacher used a green pen     3. Basel opened his bag		
1. I went into town     2. My teacher used a green pen     3. Basel opened his bag		





Help your child deal with such questions.

5 The sleeves are long

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاستلة.

e to buy some cheese.



اقرأ واملاً الفراغات؛

#### sleeves - pockets - galabeyas

ey wear 🔒
vear them for Eid.
den 👨
أعد ترتيب الكلمات؛
ضع علامات الترقيه



# The Elves and the Shoemaker



أ استمع إلى المفردات:



hoemaker	صانع أحذية
lf (elves)	جني صغير (جن)

enough

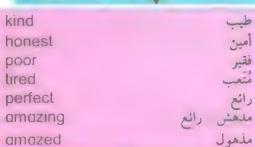
کافی

## Olhor words 🗸 == -==

money	نقود
tonight	هذا المساء (الليلة)
sports day	یوم ریاضی
Oh dear.	وا أسفاه.
wife	زوجة
workshop	ورشة
leather	جلد مدبوغ

quickly	بسرعة
happily	بسعادة
meal	وجبة
details	تفاصيل
kindness	عطف
pair	زوج من (أحذية مثلا)
once upon a time	يحكى أن

### Adjectives



beautiful	جميل
delicious	لذيذ
surprised	مندهش
new	جديد
interesting	شيق
happy	سعيد

#### Conjugation of varbs

Regu	lar v	erb
------	-------	-----

أفعال منتظمة

Irregu	lar verb
--------	----------

Present ومصارع

برت بالنقال

منتظمة	غب	فعال
	J	Q

Present	مضارع
---------	-------

believe	بعتقد	يؤمن /
dance		ير قص
thank		يشكر
describe		يصف

يجرب/يقيس

try

Past ماض	
believed	
danced	
thanked	
described	

tried

ص
فع (ما
نول
كتشف
ئىمر
ختبىء

# cut out paid said found out

#### 3) Naw do 1 loak?

## Study the following

The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

- عمل صانع الأحذية بجد ولكن لم يكن معه نقود.

- كان بائع الأحنية طيب وامين. The shoemaker was kind and honest.

The shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. ميستق صانع الأحدية عينيه.

The shoemaker's wife made him a delicious meal.

- اعدت زوجة صانع الأحنية له وجبة لنيذة.

They were surprised to see two little elves.

- كانوا مندهشين لرؤية اثنان من الجن الصغير.

" قامت بالتمشية في الحديقة أمس.

They're perfect.

- إنهم رائعين.

( u. . . . no kec surprised.

- بدت الدهشة على الزوجة.

i may have then such amazing shoes.

- ثم أرى أبداً مثل هذا الحداء المدهش.

(le Can I try them?

" هل يمكن أن أجريهم؟

The shoemaker and his wife lived happily.

- عاش صانع الأحذية وزوجته بسعادة.

Vina multi the shoes every night?

- من صنع الأحدية كل ليلة؟

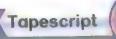
Look at the words in bold in the text. What sort of words are they?

انظر إلى الكلمات الحددة في النص. مانوع هذه الكلمات؟

Listen and read. Who made the shoes every night?

استمع واقرأ. من كان يصنع الأحذية كل ليلة؟

استمع إلى النص:





نص الاستماع

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll



cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such **amazing** shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a **delicious** meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us." That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The next night, the elves found their **new** clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes. Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

4	1	Read aga	in. Look	t at	the	words	in	bold	in	the	text.	Find
		neau aya	TTI. MOOF		Pro- 61							

atout ug	ي الكلمات المحددة في النص وإوجد،	اقرأمرة أخرى انظ ال
1.a word that describes the		للمة تصف صانع الأحلية.
2. a word that describes the	shoes:	
3. a word that describes the	shoemaker's meal:	40

Think: How do these words help you to understand the story?

Check if you agree:

	لأه الكلمات في فهم القصة؟	نکر. کیف تسامدك ه
1. The adjectives give more details.	تعطى الصفات تفاصيل أكثر.	
2. The adjectives make the story interest	esting.	
رق م	تجعل هذه الصفات القصة أكثر تث	





# How to pronounce final /ed/ sounds in verbs كيفية نطق /ed/ في نهاية الأفعال المنتظمة

#### ١- تنطق /ed/ في نهاية الفعل الماضي /Id/ للأفعال التي تنتهي بالأصوات /d/ , /t/

want	<del></del>	wanted	/Id/	need	<b>&gt;</b>	needed	/Id/
visit	<b>→</b>	visited	/Id/	add	>	added	/Id/

# ۲- تنطق |ed| في نهاية الفعل الماضي |d| للأفعال التي تنتهي بالأصوات الآتية |ed| د تنطق |ed| في نهاية الفعل الماضي |ed| عنطق |ed| د تنطق |ed|

play	<b>→</b>	played	/d/	clean	>	cleaned	/d/	
slow	<b>→</b>	slowed	/d/	grab	>	grabbed	/d/	

#### ٣- تنطق /ed/ في نهاية الفعل الماضي /t/ للأفعال التي تنتهي بالأصوات الأتية:

wash	>	washed	/t/	ask		asked	/t/
fix	<b>→</b>	fixed	/t/	dress	>	dressed	14
laugh	>	laughed	/t/	watch	→	watched	/t/
type	>	typed	/t/	breathe	>	breathed	/t/

#### Look, say, and match:

انظر وقل وسل،







- 1. Yesterday, I played football.
- 2. Yesterday, I walked in the park.
- 3. Yesterday, I tidied my room.



2 Listen:

سمع

والمنافع إلى النص:

1-/d/ played

2- /t/ walked

3-/Id/tidied

Listen and write the verbs in the correct group:

استمع واكتب الأفعال في الجموعة الصحيحة،



استمع إلى النص:



1. Ramy decined the windows. Id/

2. It in Cairo. /d/

3. We needed to leave. /Id/

4. I studied English. /Id/

5. I washed the car. /t/

6. I worked in Alexandria. /t/

#### cleaned - lived - needed - studied - washed - worked

/d/	IN	/Id/
played	walked	tidied
glermed		

Say. Then listen and check:

قل. ثم استمع وتأكد،

1- asked /t/

2- counted /Id/

3- delivered /d/

4- dressed

5- enjoyed

6- fixed

7- promised

8- slowed

9-tasted

10- waited

11- carried

12- wanted

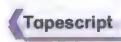


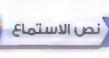


#### Multiply multi-digit numbers ضرب الأعداد الكبيرة

Think and write the numbers. Listen and check:

فكر واكتب الأرقام. استمع وتأكد،





- 1. Ten times ten equals a hundred.
- 2. Thirty times twenty equals six hundred.
- 3. Fifty times fifty equals two thousand, five hundred.
- 4. Thirty-eight times twenty-four equals nine hundred and twelve.
- $10 \times 10 = 100$

 $230 \times 20 = 60$ 

**8** 50 × 50 = .....

4 38 × 24 = ....

#### Look, think, and write:

انظر وهكر واكتبء



1. For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order?..

في اليوم الرياضي طلبت السيدة آمال ١٢ صندوق من التي شيرت للطلاب. كل صندوق يحتوى على ١٨ تي شيرت. - كم عدد التي شيرت التي طلبتها آمال؟

 $12 \times 18 = 216$ 



2. Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks? ...

تصنع نورا القبعات. هي جيدة جدًا في صنعتها. تستطيع أن تصنع ٢٥ قبعة كل أسبوع. كم عدد القبعات التي تستطيع صنعها في ٤٨ أسبوع؟

25 × 48 =

#### Did you know?

If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero! هل تعلم أنه إذا قمت بضرب أي رقم هي الصفر فالإجابة تكون صفر.



Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



Yesterday I

a was kind and honest.

The shoemaker

b. the shoemaker's shoes.

She walked

O tidied my room.

The elves made

O delicious.

The meal was

in the park yesterday.

اقرأ وضح دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة؛ :Read and circle the odd one المختلفة؛ المختلفة المختلفة

1	amazing	in the state of th	==np(mp	delizious
2	found	make	11 - 1241	bañ
3	shoes	7-11-15	' ,5, .	meals
4	morning	(i.e.)	avening	night
5	house	puser	salla	LIWN

🔁 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: 🗀 أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. tidied - I - yesterday - room - my.

2. a delicious - His - made - meal - wife.

3. and - amazed - wife - The shaemaker - were - his.

4. and - The shoemaker - wife - lived - happily - his.

ساعد ملفلك في التمامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة. . . . Help your child deal with such questions

# 3 Haw do I look?

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



The Elves and the Shoemaker

shoemaker - honest - workshop - elves - made - new shoes



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes 2. did the shoemaker s wife make a delicious meal LESSONS

Writing





school uniform زی مدرسی



رابطة عنق (كرافتة)



socks جورب (شراب)





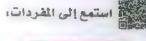
short-sleeved shirt قميص ذو أكمام قصيرة



trousers بنطلون



leather shoes حذاء جلد





checked خو مربعات (کاروهات)



skirt جيبة



صديري



sombrero . قبعة مكسيكية (سمبريرو)

	Countries	حوں	
India	الهند	Japan	اليابان
Mexico	المكسيك	Finland	فينلندا

## خلمات اخري 🐧 Other words

light	فاتح
pale	فاتح / باهت
dark	غامق
Mexican	مكسيكي
during	أثناء
feasts	أعياد
celebrations	احتفالات
smart	أنيق

material	الخامة/ القماش
size	الحجم المقاس
age	العمر
styles	أساليب/أشكال
gold	ذهب
silver	نضة
bright colors	ألوان زاهية
linen	کتان

#### Grammar

قواعدلغوية

#### الصفات Adiectives

- تستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء.
- تأتى الصفات قبل الاسم التي تصفه أو بعد verb to be.
  - عندما نستخدم أكثر من صفة نضعها في الترتيب الأتي،



- Dad bought me a small new white galabeya.
- He had to wear an old orange hat.
- -The shoemaker made a small leather shoes.

## Study the following

Our school uniform is really smart.

زينا المدرسي أنيق جدًا.

💫 When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets.

عندما يكون الطقس بارد، نرتدي صديري أزرق غامق أو جاكيت.

Mexican girls love bright colors.

تحب البنات المسيكيات الألوان الزاهية.

🔼 A sombrero is a traditional Mexican hat.

سمبريرو هي أبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.

There are lots of different styles of sombrero.

هناك الكثير من الأشكال مختلفة للقبعات الكسيكية.

- (i) My mother bought me a red cotton dress.
- اشترت لي والدتي فستان قطن أحمر.

It doesn't get very cold here.

الطقس لايصل للبرودة هنا.

- We have to wear a tie every day.
- لابد أن درتدي رابطة عنق (كرافتة) كل بوم.

Look and read. Whose school uniform is shown in the picture?

انظر واقرا. أي زي مدرسي موضح في صورة الطلاب،









#### Student A:

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short sleeved(1) white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the bous wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.



#### Student B:

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a lie<sup>(2)</sup> every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes(3) on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale(4) blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked(6) skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

- ا- قميص ذو اکمام
- ٣- خطوط (تقليم)
  - ٤- فاتح/باهت ٥- کاروهات
  - ٦-انيق V- cucup.

#### Student C:

Our school uniform is really smart<sup>(5)</sup>. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

#### Student D:

The girls and bous have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light areen shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.

#### Student E:

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests(7) or jackets. I like my uniform!

#### Read the blog again and complete the sentences:

اقرأ المنشور السابق مرة أخرى واكمل الجملء

- 1. At Student A's school, students wear black leather shoes.
- 2. At Student B's school, the girls wear a blue and white \_\_\_\_\_ skirts.
- gray skirts. 3. In summer, students at Student C's school can wear .....
- 4. The boys at Student D's school wear ..... areen socks.
- 5. The girls and boys at Student E's school all wear dark iackets.

# Read and add one more adjective to each row:

اقرأ واضف أكثر من صفة في كل صف:

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way:		
1	size	big, small,
į	age	old, new,
3	color	black, white,
4	material	cotton, linen,

# Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order:

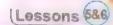
ضع الصفات في التي بين الاقواس في الترتيب الصحيح؛

1. She wore a green cotton dress.	(cotton, green	
2. He had to wear an had brange hat.	(old, orange	
3. Dad bought me a galabeya.	(new, white	
4. The shoemaker madeshoes.	(small, leather	
5. I bought ajacket for the party.	(new, greer	

# Write a description of your favorite clothes. Include adjectives and make sure they are in the correct order:

اكتب وصف اللابسك المضلة: استخدم الصفات وتأكد أنها هي الترتيب الصحيح:

My favorite clothes are	
I have a,	, which is
I also like	
They are my favorite bea	couse



# Which countries are these clothes from? Look and match:

من أي البلاد هذه اللابس؟ أنظر وصل:

#### Finland - India - Japan







## Look and read. What is the Mexican hat called?

انظر وأقراء ماذا تسمى القبعة الكسيكية؟

#### N MEXICO

These girls are wearing traditional Mexican<sup>(2)</sup> dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts(3) and retebrations(4).

Mexican girls love 'might colors(5). Even when they are not

celebrating, they wear bright, colorful-clothes.

People in Mexico wear hats to protect(6) their faces from the sun.

This is a sombrero - it's a traditional Mexican hat.

There are lots of different

styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.



fluntalalys ! "، أناء الاساد ر الوال : الثبية ·





# Activities >



Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

•		
— (A)		B +
1 We have		me a red cotton dress.
2 My mother bought	•	b. like our school uniform.
3 We really		© c. is really smart.
Our school uniform		od. blue jacket for the party.
5 I bought a new	•	to wear a tie every day.

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الغراغات؛

cool - white - jacket

My favorite clothes are 1-shirts and shorts. I have a green to	
also like my cotton socks. They are my fav	orite because they
are really	
Read and reorder the following to make sentences:	أعد ترتيب الكلمات:
1. my - I - uniform - like - school.	
2. wears - My - shoes - leather - pair of - a new - sister.	
3. bought - Hisham's father - a white - galabeya - cotton.	
4. girls - bright - Mexican - colors - love.	



Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Your school uniform

boys - wear - blue - shirt - trousers - girls - skirts

 	363

<b>5</b> Punctuate	the following:
--------------------	----------------

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. do you like your school uniform, badr	
} 	
2. these are my brother s favorite clothes	



# Review



ملابس



T-shirt تی شیرت



sweater بلوڤر



pajamas بيجامة



suit بدلة



sunglasses نظارة شمس



swimming shorts شورت سباحة (مايوه)



scarf كوفية (شال)



sneakers حذاء رياضي



galabeya جلابية



necklace عقد



coat بالطو



spotted منقط



striped مخطط / مقلم



belt حزام



رابطة عنق (كرافتة)

# مظاهر طبیعیة Natural Features





mountain جبل



crown

تاج

glacier كتلة جليدية



نھر

vest

صديري

sand dunes river كثبان رملية



flood فيضان



rainforest غابة استواثية



desert

صحراء

waterfall شلال



ولتاالنيل



منخفض الفيوم



Nile Delta Fayoum Depression Nile Valley وادي النيل

# کلمات اخری 🥞 Other words

trip	رحلة قصيرة
suitcase	شنطة سفر
uniform	زی موحد
canal	قناة مائية / ترعة
lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
river banks	ضفاف النهر
oasis	واحة
sculptures	تماثيل منحوتة
whales	حتان

Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية
popular	شاتع
costume	زی خاص
special festival	احتفال خاص
shoemaker	صانع احذية
elf (elves)	جي صغير / جن
kidness	عطف
celebrations	احتفالات

# Adjuctives



# صفات

favorite	مفضل
exciting	شيق
excited	منشوق متحمس
kind	طيب
honest	أمين
poor	فقير
tired	منعب
perfect	راثع

cool	رائع/ بارد
comfortable	مريع
beautiful	رب <u>ي</u> جميل
delicious	. ۔ ِل لذیذ
amazed	مذهول
surprised	امتدهش
new	جديد
	* .

# Conjugation of verbs

# Hogulas verbs

ارع Present	مظ
remember	يتذكر
بنط سفر) pack	يعبئ (ٿ
stretch	يمتد
connect to	
يربط بــ	يتصل/

# افعال منتظمة

ماص ۲۵۶۱	
remembered	
packed	
stretched	
connected	

# Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past
ke	الاياخا	took

	_	4
take	يأخذ	took
See	ا يرى	saw
wedr	يرتدى	wore
give	يعطى	gave
know	ا يعرف	knew
run	بجرى	ran

# Unit 3 How do I look?



Prese	ent مضارع	Past ماصر
tell	ينخبر	told
leave	يغادر / يترك	left
say	يقول	said
grow	يزرع	grew
lie (	يقع (في مكان ما	lay

Grammar

قواعدلغوية

(کل الضمائر) will ('ll) + inf.

يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

simple tense فيستخدم أرمن المستقبل أمن البسيط

-She'll pack her suitcases tomorrow.

وفي النفي نستخدم،

Future

will not (= won't) + inf.

-You won't need your coat.

🌘 وهي السؤال بـ (هل....؟) نستخدم:

# inf....? + فاعل + العلا

-Will I need my scarf?

إجابة مختصرة مثبتة ؛ Yes, you will.

اجابة مختصرة منفية ، No, you won't

نستخدم .to + inf ثلتعبيرعن الفرض من شعل شيء:

-I went to the market to buy fruit.

💿 تذكر ترتيب الصفات.

size + age + color + material

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

Can you + inf. مصدر القمل?

-Can you give me some information?

للردء

للسؤال عن شيء أو طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب نستخدم (3)

4

-Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

-Oh, sure.

Writing Skills

# مشارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

# Answers to Paragraphs

Lipson 2

#### My country (Egypt)

Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country. The Red Sea lies on Egypt's east coast. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It's a modern city. I love my country very much.



#### And the second of the second o

#### The Elves and the Shoemaker

Once upon a time, an honest shoemaker lived in town. One night the shoemaker was tired. He cut the leather and went to his bed. The following morning he found amazing shoes on the table. That night he hid and saw two little elves making the shoes.



# My school uniform

I like my school uniform. Boys wear white shirts and blue trousers. They have to wear a blue tie every day. The girls wear white shirts and blue skirts. Our school uniform is really smart.



#### 

#### Traditional Egyption clothes

Galabeyas are the popular traditional Egyptian clothes. The galabeya is a long white robe. Galabeyas are beautiful and cool. Galabeyas have hidden pockets. We wear galabeyas in special festivals.



## AZHAR EXERCISES



الاستلة الخاصة بالأرهر السريف

#### A-Listening

C	2
70	-

0	Listen an	d choose:		
4	Calabauge	are made from		

استمع وأختر

(cotton - metal - plastic) 1. Galabeyas are made from .....

2. Most men and boys wear ...... in Eid. (shorts - galabeyas - pockets )

#### **B-Language Functions**

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words below: :أقرأ وأكمل:

#### wear - celebrate - striped

A: What's your favorite clothes?

: I've got a \_\_\_\_\_ dress.

: When do you \_\_\_\_\_it?

: I wear it to \_\_\_\_\_ Sham El-Nessim.

#### C- Reading

#### Read the following text and answer the questions: أَمْراً وأحب عن الأسئلة:

The Nile Valley is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River. It is very good for growing crops like wheat, dates, and beans. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a lotus flower, the river and the river banks are the stem of the flower and the Nile Delta is the flower.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- ...... of the Nile River. (fossile banks canals) 1. The Nile Valley is on the ......
- 2. People think the river banks are the ..... of the flower. (root - stem - soit)
- 3. The Nile Valley is ......for growing crops. (good - not good - bad)

#### D- The Reader

# Read and write (True) or (False):

اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ؛

Amir's pet is a hamster.



Inuc False

# Amir found a reptile club nearby.

#### E- Usage

#### Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

- .... his homework. 1. Hisham used a pen .....
- o to write
- (i) writing
- wrote
- a new suticase. 2. Yesterday, Hazem ..... a buy
  - 15 bought
- **G** buys

Activity

Choose the ri	ight answer from a, b,	or c: äa	ختر الاجابة الصحي
1. It be	e very sunny tomorrow.		
<b>O</b> is	(b) does	<b>C</b> will	
2. Sculptures were n	nade by the		
@ rock	<b>b</b> wind	© soil	
3. Ahmed teft the pa	rkthe train.		
o to catch	catch	catching	9
4. When it's hot, I we	ear		
<b>o</b> shoes	<b>b</b> a jacket	<b>C</b> shorts	
5. The Nile	looks like a triangle .		
Valley	Depression	© Delta	
Read and mat	ich:	0	
			اقرآ وصل:

- 1 Noha's wearing
- 2 Galabeyas are
- 3 We wear sunglasses

5 Boys and girls have

4 The shoemaker's shoes

- o to protect our eyes.
- o b. a crown on her head.
- usually made from cotton. od. different uniforms in my
  - school.

e. were amazina.

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

#### stretches - triangle - fertile

The Nile Delta is in Lower Egypt. It's the .....soil between the two branches of the Nile. It .....from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a .....

# Activity Unit 3

# Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة؛

My sister's wedding party was yesterday. My sister wore a white beautiful dress. She had a crown on her head. She looked like a princess. She had white gloves on her hands. There was a gold necklace around her neck. I wore a black suit and black leather shoes. All the people at the party were wearing special clothes. We had delicious meals. The party finished at twelve o'clock at night. We sang and danced happily. Then, my sister went to her new house.

#### A- Answer the following questions:

1 What did the sister look like?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (7	True) or (False):			
		Tru	e I	False
My sister's necklace was made o	of leather.		_) {	
My sister had a crown on her he	nd		_) [	
		l l	- ' '	
Read and reorder the following		<b>4لم</b> ات: <b>95:</b>	ب الد	ىد ترتيا
Read and reorder the following  1. has - many - Fayoum - lakes.		⁴لمات: :€5	ب الد	ىد ترتيا
Read and reorder the following	g to make sentence	ئلمات: :es	سالد عالب	ىد ئرتيى

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب مُقرة الشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

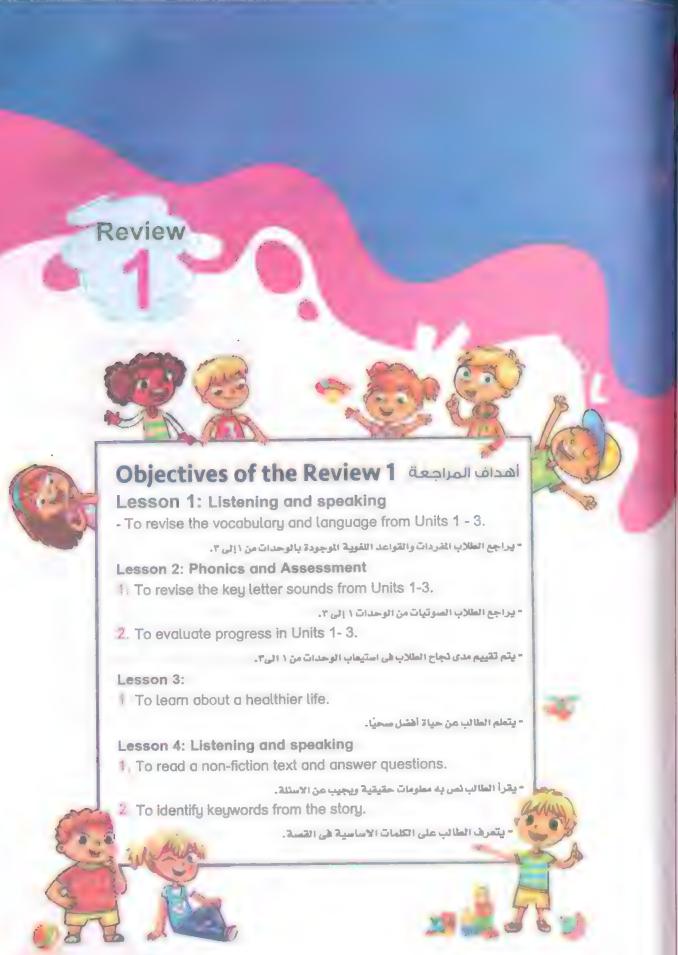
#### Traditional Egyptian clothes

gal	la	D€	y	a	5	- p	00	pι	ılo	ar	-	lo	n	g	FC	b	90	-	C	ool - pockets - hidden	
			-	-	-			_	_						_	_	-		-		7
			-	_	-			-	-		<b>-</b> -			_	_	-		_	_		6
			-	-	-			-	-						-	-	-	-	2		
				_	_			_	_											No. a. P. Call Design	

15	Punctuate	the	following:
	1 discidate	TILE	tollowing.

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. we won t need to take sweaters	
2. how many T-shirts did salwa order	



# Units 1,2 & 3

# Listen and point:

استمع وأشره

# Tapescript

----

استمع إلى النص الاستماع

1- beans

2- pineapple

3- chocolate

4- pour

5- mix 8- kung fu

6- squash 9- pajamas

7- football
10- mountain

11- swimming shorts

12- sweater

13- sunglasses

14- necklace

15- sneakers

#### Start



Finish





Dook and write:

أنظر وأكتب (كالمثال)،

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

You mix the eggs and the flour to make pizza.





I've got striped pajamas.

Donal	4	-inclos
Kead	and	circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

- 1. It's very hot and dry in the desert / rainforest.
- 2. Sometimes when there is a lot of rain there is a flood / river.
- 3. Fayourn has many lakes / glaciers.
- 4. The sculptures in the White Desert were made by soil / wind erosion.
- Make sentences in the past simple: كُوْن جِملاً بِاستَخْدَام زَمِن المَاضِي البِسيطَ،
  - 1. Mom/ cook /molokhia / last Friday

More control malakhis kgul Fridaji.

2. Salma / go / to the store/with her mom

Salma went to the store with her mom.

- 3. My / grandma / travel / Port Said / last weekend
- 4. I /get /a new phone / a week ago
- Write about your favorite clothes. What are they? How do they look? Why do you like them? Write 30- 40 words:

اكتب عن ملابسك المفضلة. ما هم؟ وكيف شكلها ولماذا نتحب هذه الملابس؟ اكتب من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة،





# Units 1, 2 & 3

Listen and circle: ستمع وضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة، **Tapescript** ستمع إلى النص الاستماع 1-sneakers 2- tennis lessons 3- oranges 4- corrots 5- pajamas 6- swimming : Are you ready, Mariam? We need to buy a lot of things in town. Mariam: Yes, I'm ready. Remember I need some new Oh, yes, for your lessons next week. I need to get food from the market, too. We need and and I also need to buy some new for Tarek. His are too small. Mariam: Do we have time to go 🎨 🐕 today, Mom? : Not today, Mariam. But we can go on the weekend. Listen again and answer: استمع مرة أخرى للنص السابق وأجب، 1. What clothes do Mom and Mariam need to buy? 2. What fruit does Mom need to buy? 3. What vegetables does Mom need to buy?\_\_\_\_ 4. Can Mariam go swimming today?.... What did Nabila do yesterday? Look and write: ماذا فعلت نبيلة بالأمس؟ انظر واكتب، 1. Nabila got up at 6 am. Nation with the state of the st

Listen and write the words you hear. Then match:

استمع واكتب الكلمات التي تراها ثم صل:

	Tapescript	نص الاستماع ﴿	الله النص النص النص النص النص النص النص النص
1- tiger	2- window	3- grape	4- spider
5- egg	6- lime	7- robot	8- cake
1- t iger	•	a	<b>(b)</b>
2- w		(C)	•
3- g			(d) (1)
4- s		(e)	
5- 0	(		
6- l		(g)	
7- r			(h)
8- c		•	46

Listen again. Tick the two-syllable words with long vowels: استمع لنص الاستماع السابق مرة أخرى. وضع دائرة حول الكلمات ذات المقطعين السوتيين التي تحتوي على الأصوات المتحركة المتدة ذات المقطعين؛

Listen and write the verbs in the past tense in the correct box. Then listen and check:

استمع واكتب هذه الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط وضعها في الجدول المناسب حسب نطق نهايات ( كر فعل فعل،

enjoy - paint - play - stop - want - work

Tapescript



ستبع إلى النص:

- 1- They enjoyed the play.
- 2- She painted a picture.
- 3- The boys played football.
- 4- We stopped at the traffic light.
- 5- Jana wanted an ice cream.
- 6- He worked as a taxi driver.

/d/	/t/	/id/
enjoyed	worked	wanted

Dook and read. Then complete for you. Use the prompts or your own ideas: انظر واقرأ. ثم أكمل من نفسك. استخدام الصور الاتية لتكوين جملا من أفكارك:









40 + 40 = i	97-10-
66 - 20	56 * 30 = 1
20-10-	26+70=
22 - 60 - [	82-80-
75-50-[]	59 - 40 - [

I'll play football next week

I'm good at drawing.

I'm bad at swimming.

My mother will make a cake tomorrow.



# 3-

# # Units 1, 2 & 3

Work in groups. Think about how we can be healthier.

Look at the pictures and discuss:

اعمل في مجموعات. فكر كيف تكون بصحة أفضل. انظر للصور وناقش:

# SE

# Key vocabulary

healthier life	حياة صحية
include	يشتمل على
junk food/ fast food	
ريات ودهون أكثر	طعام يحتوي علي سك
perhaps	ربما

not only	ليس فقط
mean	يقصد - يعني
fewer cars	سيارات أقل
less pollution	تلوث أقل













#### How can we live a healthier life?

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football? Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun with your friends!



# Non-Fiction Come to Canada!

1 Look. Which country are these things from?

انظر من أي دولة تأتى هذه الأشياء؟



totem pole عمود رسوم طوطمی



maple leaf



maple syrup شراب القيقب السكري



bear



## Vocabulary

Canada	مدينة كندا	landscapes	مناظر طبيعية
Ottawa	اتاوا (عاصمة كندا)	cold woods	غابات باردة
Russia	روسيا	climates	مناخ
Canadian police unif	orm الكندي	scary .	مخيف
·		safe	أمان / آمن
wesome uniform	زي رائع	thick coat	بالطو سميك
vide brim	حافة عريضة	pancakes ·	فطائر



We have lots of different landscapes and climates.

- لدينا مناظر طبيعية ومناخ مختلف.
- زي البوليس الكندي رائع. . The Canadian police uniform is an awesome uniform.
- هم يرتدون قبعة من الجلد لونها بني فاتح. . They wear a light brown leather hat.
- At has a wide brim to protect their faces from the sun لديها حافة عريضة لتحمى وجوههم من الشمس.
- 5 In the colder parts of Canada, they wear a very thick coat to keep warm
  - في الأماكن الباردة من كندا يرتدون بالطو سميك ليشعروا بالدفئ.

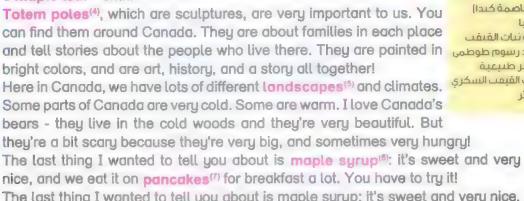
# Review 1

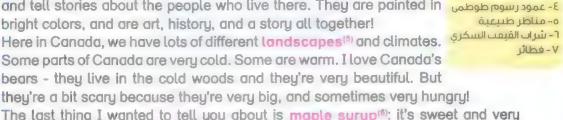
Listen and read. Where is Maisie from? What does she say about the things in Exercise 1?

استمع واقرأ. من أي بلد (Maisie)؟ ماذا تقول عن الأشياء في التمرين السابق:

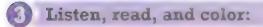
Hi, I'm Maisie. I'm from Canada and I love my country. I'm going to tell you some special things about it. Here we go!

Canada is north of North America and its capital is Ottawa(1). It's the second largest country in the world, after Russia(2). It has a really cool red and white flag with a maple leaf(3) on.it.





The last thing I wanted to tell you about is maple syrup: it's sweet and very nice, and we eat it on pancakes for breakfast a lot. You have to try it!



استمع إلى النص الأتي. واقرأ ثم ثون:

استمع إلى النص:

Hi, it's Maisie again! One more thing I want to tell you about is our police. They're very kind and help keep us all safe. They have an awesome(1) uniform, too - they wear it on special days.

First of all, they wear a light brown leather hat. It has a wide brim(2) to protect their faces from the sun. Then, theu have a beautiful red jacket with a dark brown leather belt and long dark brown leather gloves. Their pants are dark

blue and have a yellow stripe(3) down the side. Their boots are dark brown leather, too.

On normal days, their uniform is quite different - they wear a gray shirt, dark blue pants, and a hat. In the colder parts of Canada, they wear a very thick coat to keep warm.



ا- اتاوا (عاصمة كبدا)

٣- ورقة ثنات القيقب

ه- مناظر طبعية

۱- روسیا

٧- فطائر

٦- حافة عريضة ٣- حط (نقلیم)



# Activity

on Units (1,2 & 3)

		× ,
1 Choose the righ	it answer from a, b o	اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: ٢ <b>٠:</b>
1. Can I have	limes, please?	
any 2. How about	some healthy food?	© a
a buy 3. We can play tennis	<b>5</b> buys at the tennis	<b>c</b> buying
court 4. I bought	<b>b</b> pitch to keep me warm.	c pool
sneakers  5. Are there	j glasses carrots?	c coats
some	<b>6</b> any	<b>©</b> 0
Read and match	1:	اقرأ وصل:
We can make	© a, pla	aying squash.
2 I'm good at	• b. de	licious juice from mangoes.
Cotton	© c. in E	Egypt's White Desert.
I'll wear a striped	o d. gro	ows in the Nile Delta.
There are amazing so	ulptures e. dre	ess in Sham El-Nessim .
Read and fill in	the gaps:	اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:
	chickpeas - delicious - in	gredients
	neal. <u>It</u> has some •••••••	such as pasta, rice and

# Review (

# Broad the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أحب عن الأسئلة؛ Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. Hedaya won many important awards. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

#### to choose the nanta siver from a, b or c

- 1- Hedaya won the ...... medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. @ metal 15 gold **6** bronze
- 2- Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian ...... player.
- squash

- 10 taekwondo
- **G** karate

#### B-Armor the following questions:

- 3. When was Hedaya Malak born?
- 4. What did Hedaya win at the age of fourteen?
- أعد ترتيب الكلمات: . Read and reordar the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات
  - 1. she Why important is?
  - 2. squash She's good at very playing?

  - 4. tidied I yesterday room my.

# Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences uning the following annual اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

#### Football

favorite - good at - friends - football pitch - football boots



# Fracticale the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1, what will hedaya do next \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. my father muhammad is a teacher \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

Theme

Unit

# Myself and others

# Looking after our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا





#### **Objectives of the Unit** لمحاف الوحدة

- Listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes
  - " يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الناظر الطبيعية المنتلفة.
- Learn about Elephantine Island.
  - يمرف الطالب معلومات عن جزيرة الفنتين (بمدينة أسوان).
- Use sentences in the past continuous.
  - يستخدم الطالب عبارات أو جمل في زمن الماشي المستمر،
- Learn about greenhouse gases and climate change.
  - يمرف الطالب معلومات عن غازات الاحتباس الحراري وتغير اللناخ.
- 5 Learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
  - يتعلم الطالب ويتحدث عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.
- 6. Learn about number sequences. يتعلم الطالب عن التسلسل الرقميء 7. Learn how to say three consonants together.
  - يتمنم الطالب كيفية نطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معاً.
- Learn to correct spelling mistakes. پتطم الطالب أن يصحح أخطاؤه الإملائية.
- Read and listen to a short story about a community garden.
  - يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن حديقة عامة في محيط الجتمع الذي يعيش فيه. Write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.
    - يكتب الطالب تشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية في مصر،





# Lesson 1

# My visit to Elephantine Island

# Key vocabulary











جزيرة

mountain

جبل

بحيرة

شلال waterfall









forest غالة

coral reefs شعاب مرجانية

Aswan Botanical Gurden Temple of childe حديقة النباتات بأسوان

معيد فيلة

lots	الكثير
sunset	غروب الشمس
Tombs of the Nobles	مقاد النبلاء

rare	نادر
reign	يرة خكم



شكل
تاريخ
نتيجة (تقويم)
المركبات في حركة المرور
مدينة كبيرة
مدينة صغيرة

trip	رحية قصيره
visit (10)	زيارة
walk (n)	تمشية
particularly	خصوصا
felucca	مركب شراعي (فلوكة)
full of	مليء ب

# Adjectives



fantastic	راثع
calm / quiet .	هادي
clean	نظيف

beautiful	
dicorated	
famous	

	مزخرف	جميل مزين / مشهور
--	-------	-------------------------

# Conjugation of variety - passioner

Regular verbs	أغمال منتظمة	li
<u></u>		

	_	
miss	يفتقد شخص	missed
try	يحاول	tried
walk	یسیر (یمشی)	walked

Lwas travelling burboat

#### irregular verbs أطعال غير منتظمة Present Past مانس understand find يجال

يذهب

# understood found went

- هناك الكثير لتراه.

# Study the following

Ine Elephantine Island is f	ull of history.	جزيرة إليفنتين تزخر بالتاريخ.
	4	
There's lots to see.	1	. I The Address to

go

5	n the	most fantastic , 111-1	- إنها المكان الأكثر روعة.

It is the ofcest part of Assom.	- إنها اقدم جزء في مدينة اسوان.
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

9	After that, we	went to Aswan	Museum.	بعد ذلك، ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان.
---	----------------	---------------	---------	--------------------------------

6	We can go for long w	alks.	نننا التمشية لمسافات طويلة.	- يمك
---	----------------------	-------	-----------------------------	-------

I	 ng boat	- كنت مسافرا بالقارب.
5		

1	Our t wait to act	s god soon,	- لا أطيق الانتظار لاراك قريبًا.
9	The sunsets are	darladis, comestanti	from a felucca.

	- اوقات غروب الشمس رائعة وخصوصا وانت في مركب شراعي.	
10	They have beautiful brightly decorated houses.	

2 cats of all 22 chan 21 can	1:1: a - a - a -

		- لديهم منازل جميله ومريبه بالوال راهيه.
11 We	e're going to walk to the	Tombs of the Nobles.

<sup>-</sup> سوف نمشى إلى مقابر البنادء.

Listen and read the postcard. Where did Nagwa go?

استمع إلى واقرأ البطاقة البريدية. أين ذهبت نجوي؟





نص الاستماع

والستمع إلى المفردات



How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island 'and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was travelling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. — we think it's the shape!

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. Infact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum 1. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thulmose III(4)

But it's not only about history — it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is

clean. We can go for long walks. There are no forests but there are lots of trees. so it's quite green.



Temple of Philae

Listen again and answer the questions:

The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca.

We were walking in one of the Nubian villages (6) this morning, They have beautiful brightly decorated



**Aswan Botanical** Garden

houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles 17 through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.

Can't wait to see you soon! Nagwa '

#### 

أ- حديقة النباتات بأسوان

استمع مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة ،

- آ- ميد فيله
- ٣- جزيرة اليفنتين
- ٤- متحف أسوان
- ه- تحتمس الثالث
  - ٦ قرى يونية
- ٧- مقائر البيلاء

- 1. Did Nagwa have a good trip?
- 2. Why is she feeling sad?

mowhen



forest - island - lake - mountain - coral reefs - waterfall









# Work with a partner. Look and discuss:

شترك مع زميلك. انظر وناقش:

- 1. Alexandria is a city. Can you name other Egyptian cities?
- 2. Dahab is a town. Can you name other Egyptian towns?
- 3. The beautiful Nubian villages near Aswan are famous. Can you name other Egyptian villages?
- 4. Do you live in a city, town, or village? Which do you like best?







Alexandria

Dahab

Nubian village

#### Did you لا تعلم؟ علم الماد الما

Look at these rocks from the White Desert. What can you see? People often call them 'chicken and mushroom' rocks!

انظر إلى هذه الصخور من الصحراء البيضاء ماذا ترى؟ غالبًا ما يطلق عليها الناس صخور الدجاج والفطر!





# Lesson

# Activities

Read and complete the dialog with the following words:

امِّراً وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الآتية؛

missing - How - fine

Heba: Hi Mona!

Mona: Hi Heba! 1 are you?

Mona : I'm 3 ...... you.

Heba: Me, too.

Match:

صل:

mountain

2 island

8 coral reefs

waterfall waterfall

5 lake

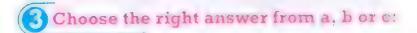
d











اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

.... to see in Elephantine Island. 1. There's ...

O lot

10 g lots

Clots

2. We visited the ...... of Philae.

Tower

**D** Temple

garden

3. We can ..... for long walks. look 1 play **G** go 4. The Elephantine Island is ..... of history. 10 fall fuli G fill 5. We enjoyed watching the ...... at 6 p.m in Aswan. sunrise 10 sunburn **C** sunset 6. These coins are expensive because they are ..... o rore

terrible

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

C poor



Your city (Aswan)

fantastic - museums - traffic - quiet - love



5 Punctuate the following:	ضع علامات الترقيم للأتى:
1. i m missing you	
2. did nagwa have a good trip	

## Lesson

# What were you doing?



#### **Hugmortis**

looking at old things, we found a rare calendar.

1. We some inchanged at old things when we found a rare calendar.

#### of the same

عند إضافة (ing) للفعل في الماضي المستمر يلاحظ الأتي: ۱. إذا انتهى الفمل ب(e) غير منطوقه تحذف(e) ويضاف(ing)

٧. عند انتهاء النعل ب حرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ويضاف بعده (ing).

#### Read and choose:

اقرأ واخترا

1. We were trying / trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name.

2. I were / was walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning.

Complete the table about the past continuous with the words in أكمل الجدول عن زمن الماضي المستمر بالكلمات الأتية، the box:

#### she - Was - were

I	was	tistening to the radio.
you / we / they	(1)	making a cake.
he / (2)/ it	was	swimming in the sea.
Ouestion		

Was	I	listening to music?
Were	you / we / they	makingfatta?
(3)	he / she / it	swimming in a lake?

#### Luniting after our world Unit

Circle the correct word:

ضع دايرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة ،

- We use the past continuous for something that happened and stopped / continued over a period of time in the past.

Look and write. Use the past continuous: انظر واكتب استحدم رمن الماضي المستمر :

1. The fox was sleeping

2. The fish \_ \_\_\_\_ (swim)

3. The tiger \_\_\_\_ (drink) water.

4. The people \_\_\_\_\_ (walk)

(watch) everyone.

11. We (have) a great time.

(run)? 7 the cat

What was Mona doing at different times yesterday? Look and write. مادا كانت نفعل منى في اوفان مختلفة امس؟ استخدم العبارات الاتية ، Wise the phrases in the box: مادا كانت نفعل منى في اوفان مختلفة

arrive at school - get up - have lunch - study English





1- warm She was getting up.



2- 8 am:



3- 10 dm: \_

4- 3 pm:



Lesson 2

استمع إلى المفردات

climate change تغير المناخ الاحتباس الحراري greenhouse effect غازات الاحتباس الحراري greenhouse gases الغلاف الجوي atmosphere suitable : greenhouse صوبة زراعية

normal	طبيعي/ عادي
livestock farming	تربية الماشية
blanket	فطاء (بطانية)
cause	سيب
result	نتيجة

# گلمات لحری 🔏 Other words

	planet	كوكب
l	temperature	درجة الحرارة .
l	the Earth	كوكب الأرض
l	warmer	أكثر دفئا
	scientist	عالِم
	period	فترة زمنية
	factory	مصنع
	transportation	وسائل النقل
	sun's heat	حرارة الشمس

go up	يرتفع
carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
water vapor	بخار الماء
methane	غاز الميثان (غاز المستنقعات)
sea level	مستوى سطح البحر
crops	محاصيل
tropical plants	نباتات إستوائية
surface	سطع
go out	يخرج
worried	قلِق

go back

space

CHAPPE

يعود/ يرتد

reenhouse	gases
الحراري	غازات اللحتياس

gases like carbon dioxide, water vapor and methane

greenhouse effect الاحتباس الحراري

a process مملية in which greenhouse gases make the temperature warmer to grow crops faster

climate change

a change to the normal weather of the Earth over a long peried of time

# Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أقعال منتظمة
Present	مضارع	ماضِ Past
arrive	ايصل	arrived
change	اليغير/يتغير	changed

happen

cause

die

produce

explain

ماضِ Past
arrived
changed
happened
caused
produced
died
explained

# Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	- مشارع	Past ماض
sleep	ینام	slept
get	يصبح	got
get up	يستيقظ	got up
keep	يحتفظ بــ	kept
rise	يرتفع	rose
grow g	ينمو / يزرع	grew
مس) shine	تسطع (الشا	shone

# Study the following

يموت

يشرح

Scientists think that people are causing climate change.

- بعتقد العلماء أن الناس هم من يتسببون في تغير المناخ. Factories produce too many greenhouse gases.

- تُخرج / تُنتج المصانع العديد من غازات الاحتباس الحراري.

The Earth's temperature goes up. - ترتفع درجة حرارة الأرض،

A greenhouse is made of glass so it keeps all the plants warm.

- تصنع الصوية الزراعية من الزجاج لذلك تحتفظ بالنباتات دافئة.

The greenhouse gases work as a blanket around the Earth.

- تعمل غازات الاحتباس الحراري كغطاء (بطانية) حول كوكب الأرض.

Greenhouse gases are important to keep our planet at the suitable temperature for life.

- الغازات المسببة للاحتباس الحراري مهمة للحفاظ على كوكبنا في درجة حرارة مناسبة للحياة.

We produce in a production with the tones, transportation, building things, and livestock farming.

- نحن ننتج الكثير من الفازات المسببة للاحتباس الحراري من خلال المصانع ، ووسائل النقل ، ويناء الأشياء ، وتربية الماشية

The greenhouse gases keep more of the sun's heat inside the Earth.

- تحافظ غازات الاحتباس الحراري على قدر أكبر من حرارة الشمس داخل الأرض.

The greenhouse gases stop the heat from going back to the space.

- تمنع غازات الاحتياس الحراري الحرارة من العودة إلى الفضاء،

Animals may lose their food because plants die.

- قد تفقد الحيوانات طعامها لأن النباتات تموت.

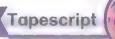
Sea level rises, so people can lose their homes.

- يرتفع مستوى سطح البحر ، لذلك قد يفقد الناس منازلهم. في المستوى سطح البحر ، لذلك قد يفقد الناس منازلهم. في ال

· ليس لدينا ما يكفي من الأمطار ومحاصيلنا لا يمكن أن تنمو.

Listen and read. What is climate change?

ستمع واقرأ ، ما هو تغير المناخ؟





استمع إلى النص

# Climate change<sup>(1)</sup>

temperature goes up.

Greenhouse gases (2) are important to keep our planet at the suitable (3) temperature for life. One hundred years ago, the Earth was getting a little warmer, and the atmosphere(4) was changing a little. But over the past 20 years, changes are happening faster and faster.

Scientists think that people are causing climate change - a change to the normal (5) weather of the Earth over a long period of time. We produce too many greenhouse gases through factories, transportation, building things, and livestock farming. The greenhouse gases now keep more of the sun's heat inside the Earth, and stop this heat from going back(6) to the space. So the Earth's

Greenhouse gases are gases like carbon dioxide, water vapor, and methane. So what are the results of climate change?

- -Animals may lose their food because plants die.
- -Sea level rises, so people can lose their homes.
- -The climate becomes too hot. We don't have enough rain and our crops can't grow.

ا- تغير المناخ

٦- غازات الزحتياس الحراري

ا- منانسة

٤- الغلاف الجوي

٥- طبيعي/عادي

٦- وسائل النقل

٧- تربية الماشية

۸- پرجه/پرئد

Read again. Do the things in the photos cause climate change? Or are they results of climate change? Put C (Cause) or R (Result)

اقرأ مرة أخرى. هل الأشياء في الصور سبب أم نتيجة لتغير المناخ ضع (C) للسبب و (R) للنتيجة،















# Unit 4 Looking ofter our world

## Listen and read the text. Why can't Laila do her homework?

استمع إلى واقرأ النص. لماذا لا تستطيع ليلي عمل واجبها المنزلي؟









Mom: Laila, what's the matter?

Lalla: Hi Mom. I'm feeling worried. I can't do my homework.

Mom: What's the problem?

plants grow.

Laila: I have to explain the greenhouse effect(1) and it's quite difficult.

Mom: OK, let me help. You know what agreenhouse<sup>(2)</sup> is, don't you? It's made of glass so it keeps all the plants inside it warm. This means that in cold countries, we can grow vegetables like tomatoes and tropical plants<sup>(3)</sup>. The temperature inside doesn't change and the



Laila: Yes, but why is that the same as climate change?

Mcm: Well, we have a natural greenhouse effect on Earth. There are gases in the atmosphere that keep the Earth warm so we can live on it. These are greenhouse gases. But now we have more and more of the greenhouse gases and the Earth is warming up too much.

ا- الاحتباس الحراري ٢- صوبة زراعية ٣- نباتات استواثية ٤- غطاء (بطانية) ٥- تسطع (الشمس) ٢- سطع الارض

Laila: But why is it like a greenhouse?

Mom: The greenhouse gases work like a blanket<sup>(5)</sup> around Earth. Greenhouse gases allow the sun's light to shine<sup>(5)</sup> onto the Earth's surface<sup>(6)</sup>, but they stop the heat of the sun from going out of the Earth to space, and they make the planet too hot.

Laila: Thanks, Mom! I understand the greenhouse effect better now!

# Activities

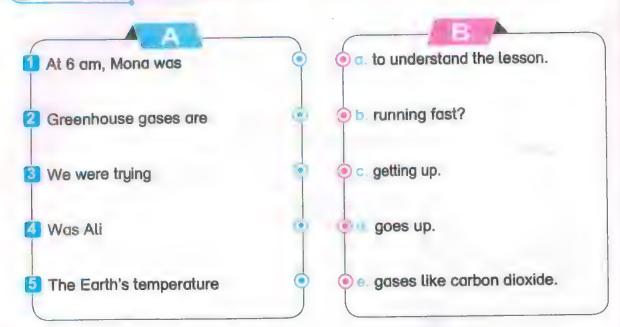
Choose the ri	ght answer from a, b or	اختر الإجابة الصحيحة؛
1. The cat	drinking milk.	
<b>o</b> were	<b>b</b> was	<b>C</b> are
2. We were	a great time at the par	k.
a have	<b>b</b> had	<b>C</b> having
3 th	e boys playing football?	
Was	<b>b</b> football	C Is
4. At 12 am, I	studying. I was sleep	ping.
was not	were not	c is not
5. We keep the plan	nts warm in a glass	relegated d
1 house	<b>1</b> planet	© greenhouse
6. The temperature	in the desert isn't	for us to live.
suitable	<b>b</b> hot	C terrible
7. Scientists think th	at people are causing	change.
• weather	<b>1</b> climate	c greenhouse
8. Factories produce	too many greenhouse	******************************
o results	<b>b</b> blankets	© gases
Fill in the gaps	using the words in the	box:
	لاَتية:	املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات ا
	produce - change - fa	Irming
Scientists thi	nk that people are causing	climate 1
② too	many greenhouse gases th	rough factories, transportation,
building things, and l	vestock ø	



# Unit 4 Looking after our world

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



# 4 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:

- 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1. i was visiting a nubian village
- 2. was mona studying English

# Eco-tourism





eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
environment	البيئة
hotel	فندق

الحياة البرية
التلوث
عالِم في الرياضيات
يغطس

# All the control of th

local people	السكان المحليون
journey	رحلة طويلة
culture	ثقافة حضارة
historical places	أماكن تاريخية
exciting	مثير
look after	يعتني بــ
project	مشروع
presenter	مقدم يرامج
tour guide	مرشد سيأحي

odsis   Desails	واحة (واحات)
UNESCO	منظمة اليونيسكو
Eco village	قرية بها سياحة بيئية
pros	مميزات
cons	عيوب
comfortable	مريح
sea animals	حيوانات بحرية
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
	•



## nun an E

**Eco-tourism** 

السياحة البيئية

It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

# 4.) Looking after our world

# Conjugation of verbs

see

come

learn

tell

# Regular verbs

create

أفعال منتظمة

Past win

created damaged

staued

worked out

preserved

يتلف / يدمر damage يتعلق بـــ related to relate to

يخلق / ينشيء

stay

work out يستنتج يحفظ preserve

irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present يدفع مالأ pay

يفهم يرى

Past June peid CGM

يأتي came

يخبر يتعلم

toid (38 - 80 mg

bu - in - on

مع وسائل

المواصلات

Grammar

قواعدلغوية

مع وسائل المواصلات

يمكن أن نستخدم حروف الجر

كالأتي

وسيلة مواصلات (ليس بينهما فاصل) + bu

by car - by train - by bus - etc.....

- ولكن نقول on foot بمعنى (سيرًا على الأقدام).

in - on

وسيلة مواصلات لا يمكن المشي داخلها (وبينهما فاصل .... the / my....

-in a / my car - in a / the taxi.

وسائل مواصلات يمكن المشي داخلها (بينهما فاصل) + on

-on the bus - on the train -

on my bike / horse

- لاحظه:

# Study the following

Tourism gives jobs for local people. - توفر السياحة فرص عمل للسكان المحليين.

Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.

- تسبب السياحة الكثير من غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون نتيجة الرحلات الجوية.

Tourism helps people learn about new cultures.

- تساعد السياحة الناس على التعرف على ثقافات جديدة.

Tourism damages the natural environment. - تضر السياحة بالبيئة الطبيعية.

Tourism damages historical places or monuments.

- تضر السياحة بالأماكن التاريخية أو الأثار.

Eco-tourism tooks after the environment. - تعتنى السياحة البيئية بالبيئة.

Eco-tourism is not as comfortable as normal tourism.

- السياحة البيئية ليست مريحة مثل السياحة العادية.

- يحب السياح البيئيون السفر بالدراجات. Eco-tourists like to travel by bikes.

Eco-tourists like to stay in small local hotels.

- يحب السياح البيئيون الإقامة في فنادق محلية صغيرة.

10 Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

" يحب السياح البيئيون التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

Think about tourism. Check (/) the good things and cross (X) the ضع علامة ( √ ) أمام فوائد السياحة وعلامة ( ١٨ ) أمام أضرارها: bad things:

#### Tourism...

1. gives jobs for local people.

2. creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.

3. helps people learn about new cultures.



5. damages historical places or monuments.

4. damages the natural environment.



Lesson 3

Listen to Sherif. What is eco-tourism?



استمع إلى النص

ا- مرشد سیاحی

٦- مدينة الغردقة

٣- السناحة البيثية

ه- السائحون البيئيور

٤- السثة

٦ - التلوث ٧- فيادق

9-حفظ

٨- الحياة البرية المحلية

Presenter

: Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide(1) in Hurghada(2). Tell us about eco-tourism(3), please. What

Sherif

: Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks

after the environment and helps local people.

: How does it help the environment(4) and people?

Sherif

: Eco-tourists(5) don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution(6) planes cause. They

travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

Presenter

: I see. Where do they stay?

Sherif

: They don't like big hotels(7). They stay in small,

local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

**Presenter**: What do they do when they travel?

Sherif

: They like to learn about local wildlife(8) projects and local culture.

Presenter

: Can you give me an example?

Sherif

: Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving(6) the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

: That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

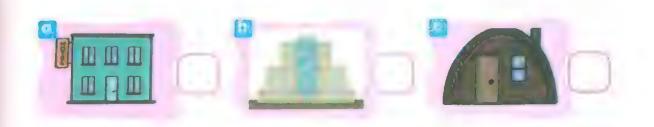
Listen again and check (/) the correct pictures. You can check more than one picture each time:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع علامة ( √) أمام الصور الصحيحة. يمكن وضع علامة ( √) أمام أكثر من صورة،

1. Eco-tourists like to travel by ...



2. Eco-tourists like to stay in ...



3. Eco-tourists like to ...





# Unit 4 Leaking after all world

Listen and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

استمع وأكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات التي بالأطارء







Narrator: 1

Sherif: Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and

helps local people.

Narrator: 2

Sherif: Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution

that planes cause.

Narrator: 3

Sherif: They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

Narrator: 4

Sherif: They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

Narrator: 5

Sherif: Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the

coral reefs.

Narrator: 6

Sherif: Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they

can dive.

coral - dive - environment - hotels - wildlife - pollution

- 1. Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the ....environment .... and helps local people.
- 2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the ....... that planes cause.



- 3. They stay in small, local ...... or pay to stay in people's n
- 4. They like to learn about local ...... projects and local culture.
- 5. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the ......
  reefs.
- 6. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can ..........



A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef



Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village

- Work with a partner. Discuss the questions: المنافعة الاستلة المنافعة الاستلة المنافعة الاستلة المنافعة المناف
- 1. What do you think of eco tourism?
- 2. What are the pros and cons of eco-tourism?

  Make a list in your notebook, and write five sentences. Discussor, and an are the pros and cons of eco-tourism?

Pros	Cons
It helps the environment.	It's not as comfortable as normal tourism.

Unit 4 Lichne will but world



Number suguences

متتالية الأعداد

- متتالية الأعداد هي عبارة عن قائمة من الأرقام متصلة بيعضها طبقًا لقاعدة.
  - 🧿 عند فهمك للقاعدة، يمكنك أن تجد الرقم التالي لل المتتالية.

Ex.	1	3	(5)	7	9	(11)	13	15	
				-					

🧿 نلاحظ مما سبق أن الفارق بين كل عدد وآخر رقمين، ولذلك فإن القاعدة هي أن تضيف رقمين لكل عدد ،

The next number in the sequence:

- Write the numbers to complete the rules: اكتب العدد الذي سيضاف لتكمل المتتالية،
  - 5 10 15 20 25 30

Rule: add ......5

7 10 13 16 19 22

Rule: add .....

0 10 20 30 40 50

Rule: add .....

Write the next two numbers in each sequence: اكتب العددين التاليين في كل متتالية



A number sequence can go up (= we add numbers +) or down (= we subtract numbers - ):

Write the missing numbers in each sequence:

اكتب الأرقام الناقصة في كل متتالية:

1	75	60
8		*********
8		
4		*****
B		*****
6	64 55 46 37	

Look and read. Write the next three numbers in the Fibonacci sequence: انظر واقراً. اكتب الثلاثة أعداد التالية في متتالية فيبوناتشي،

#### The Fibonacci sequence

Fibonacci was a famous Italian mathematician.
He noticed a number sequence that was very useful for math and other sciences. Because he was the first to talk about this sequence, it took his name. It's called 'the Fibonacci sequence'.



In this sequence, you find the next number if you add the two previous

كان فيبوناتشي عالم إيطالي في الرياضيات. لاحظ متالية أعداد مفيدة للرياضيات والعلوم, ولكونه أول من تحدث عن المتالية فقد سميت باسمه. ويطلق عليها متالية فيبوناتشي و المتالية نعصل على العدد التالي أذا اضفت العددين السابقين ممّا كما يلي:

0 1 1 2 3 5 8 13.....

Answer: 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21.....etc.



اقرأ وصاء

Read and match:		يْراً وصل:
Eco-tourism looks after	(•)	a. stay in small local hotels.
Tourism damages historical	(4)	b for local people.
Tourism gives jobs	•	oc. places or monuments.
Eco-tourism is not as	•	d. comfortable as normal tourism.
Eco-tourists like to		e. the environment.

Choose the right a	nswer from a, b or c:	اختر الإجابة الصحيحة
1. Eco-tourists like to trav	rel bikes.	
in : 2. Tourists come to the R	<b>(5)</b> by ed Sea to	c at
<ul><li>dive</li><li>Eco-tourists like to lear</li></ul>	j drink n aboutproje	cts and local culture.
energy	<b>b</b> wildlife	c sequence that planes cause.
pollution	<b>()</b> journey in the Red sed	c pros
loaves	(b) leaves	c reefs
Read and fill in the	gaps:	امّراً واملاً الفراغات:

environment - pros - comfortable

There are a ...... and cons of eco-tourism. Eco-tourism helps the ...... But it's not as 
as normal tourism.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. how does eco-tourism help egypt

2. tourists come to the Red sea to dive

LESSON

# \* Pronunciation

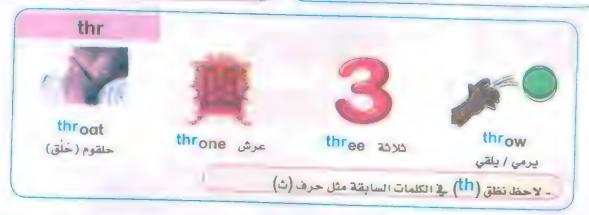
م ي هذا الدرس يقوم الطالب بالتعرف على بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق لوجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها وهذه نماذج منها،











ice skating	النزلج على الجليد	belt	حزام
chocolate	شيكولاتة	sneakers	حذاء رياضي

Read and write. Then listen and repeat.

اقرأ واكتب. ثم استمع وردد

استمع إلى النص:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

The king sat on his o throne eating o.....on a 3 ...... He was 4 ...... his 5 ...... ..... He heard a @..... A @.... man came to help.

Look and check (/) the correct words. Correct the spelling mistakes in the other words:

انظر وضع علامة ( √ ) أمام الكلمات الصحيحة. قم بتصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية في الكلمات الأخرى:







milc

cake

chokolate







lakke



beans



belt .



mountaine



sneekers

# 

# Key vocabulary

أن استمع إلى المفردات المفردات

Lesson 4

community مجتمع صغير/ جماعة weeds surprise

حشائش ضارة

make friends بكون صداقات water (ed) يروى بالماء

# Adjustives



فوضوى (في حالة فوضي) messu glad dirty متسخ قذر kind عطوف harmful delicious لذيذ الطعم/ شهى

# کلمات آخری 👸 Other words



تربية زراعية soil seeds make sure

sunshine أشعة الشمس get bigger بزداد حجما healthu صحيح (بصحة جيلة)

#### Chine I

حشائش ضارة

## Canjugation of verbs

# Regular verbs

Present

# أضال منتظمة

harmful plants

# Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

invite	يدعو (لمناسبة)
work	يعمل
plant	يزرع
pick	يقطف/ يلتقط
receive	يتسلم

# Past ماض invited

worked planted picked received

# Present

ماض Past مضارع felt feel dug dig يحفر took out take out taught teach

# Study the following

The garden was dirty and messy.

- كانت الحديقة متسخة وفي حالة فوضي.

They dug the soil.

• قاموا بحضر التربة الزراعية.

They planted their vegetable and fruit seeds.

قاموا بزراعة بدور الخضير والفاكهة.

He made friends will this allow people of the community percen-

- كون صداقات مع الأخرين في الحديقة.

(a) He watered the plants every day to keep them healthy.

قام برى النباتات كل يوم للحفاظ على صحتها.

He took out the weeds - the harmful plants.

- قام بانتزاع الحشائش الضارة.

Listen and read. How does Maged feel at the end? Why?

استمع واقرأ. كيف يشعر ماجد في النهاية الااذا؟

استمع إلى النص النص

## I HELP MY COMMUNITY

# Maged and the community(1) garden

Maged's mom invited him to go to the community garden with her. At first, he didn't like it. It was dirty and messy<sup>(2)</sup>, and he thought he didn't like plants. But Maged is a kind boy and he went to help his mom.

Together, they worked in their part of the garden.

They dug(3) the Soil(4). He and his mom planted their vegetable and fruit seeds.

He made friends(5) with the other people at the community garden. After working in the garden, Maged and his new friends sometimes went to play football in the park.

He remembered what he learned about looking after plants at school. He Watered(6) the plants every day to keep them healthy. He took out the Weeds<sup>(7)</sup> – the harmful plants. He made sure the plants got lots of Sunshine(6) to help them grow.

He started to love the garden and was very happy to go there every day.

ا-محتمی

٦- فوضوي (في حالة فوضي)

٣-حفروا

٤- تربة زراعية

٥- كون صداقات

٦- روی بالماء

٧- حشائش ضارة

۸ - اشعة الشوس

It was so great to see the plants get bigger and bigger. Every day there was a surprise ", with a new tomato or some new beans.

٩- مفاجاة ا- قطف اا-لذيد الطعم اا- مسرور

When all the fruit and vegetables were ready, the best thing was picking everything. Maged and his mom took the beans, tomatoes, and strawberries to the people in the community - the older people and the people who were ill. They were so happy to receive all the delicious food and Maged felt very glad 12).

Now Maged loves the garden and teaches others about growing plants.

# Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ مرة أخرى واجب (صح) أم (خطأ)،

1. Maged had an idea to take part in the community garden.

2. He helped his mom in the garden.

3. He planted flowers in the garden.

4. He made some new friends at the community garden.

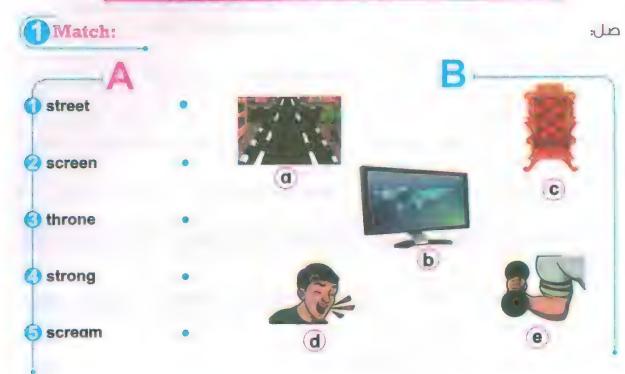
5. He enjoyed growing things in the garden.

6. When all the fruit and vegetables were ready, he gave them to his family.



# Activities





Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

1. Farmers ..... their plants every day.

( water 10 drink **G** burn 2. I don't like this garden, it's dirty and ...... delicious : messy **G** glad 3. We need to take out the ...... to keep the plants healthy. weeks 5 soil **C** weeds 4. I like to ...... friends on Facebook. o do **1** make **c** give

5. It was a ..... to get nice presents on my birthday.

' [b] glad

ommunity

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

Lesson 4 🚺 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. out - weeds - Maged - took - the.

2. seeds - planted - fruit - They - vegetable - and.

3. plants - keep - He - to - watered - the - healthy - them.

4. friends - other - He - people - made - with - the.

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



community - like - messy - soil - glad

	man range
 	(7.5) - F
 	 JEH BENE
 	PARO
	2 . M. C. A. W.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. does mustafa make a lot of friends

2. it s dirty and messy

6. Take out these plants, they are ......

**C** harmful

**C** healthy

surprise

**©** kind

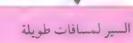
# LESSONS

# Taba: My favorite eco-resort

# Key vocabulary

eco-resort	منتجع بيئى	wildlife	حياة برية
eco-lodges	نزل بيئية/ أماكن سكن صديقة للبيئة		

# انشطة للإجازات 🚪 Holiday Activities



إقامة المعسكرات (التخييم) camping

diving

# Adjectives &

hiking



excellent	ممتاز
fascinating	مبهر/خلاب
fantastic	راثع
perfect	تام/ كامل
round	مستدير

friendly	ودود
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
cool	لطيف
main	أساسي/ رئيسي
rare	نادر

# Other words



valley	وادي
Nubian ibex	حيوان الوعل النوبي
camp	مخيم معسكر
Sinai	سيناء
eco-destination	مقصد بيثى ا وجُهَةَ بيئية
example	نموذج .

culture	تنانة
structure	بناء
building	مبنى
hut	كوخ
way of life	أسلوب الحياة

# Study the following

Taba is an excellent example where eco-tourism works well.

- تُعد طايا نموذجًا ممتازًا حيث السياحة البيئية تعمل جيدًا.

You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba. - بمكنك أن تحد حياة برية رائعة في طابا.

The buildings are fascinating. - المباني مبهرة.

Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

- يمكن للسياح البيئيين الإقامة في المخيمات والنزل البيئية.

You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea in Taba.

- يمكنك أن تحد وديان وجيال وصحراء ويحر في طابا.

The local people are friendly.

- السكان المحليون ودودون.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba.

- إذا كنت تحب التاريخ فيوجد في طابا الكثير من الأشياء المتعلقة.

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

- يمكن أن تجد كل ما يتعلق بإجازة رائعة في طابا.

Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt.

- تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر.

10 We have wonderful to fish, birds, and animals.

- ثدينا أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.



Look and read. Why is Taba good for eco-tourism?

انظر واقرأ. لماذا تُعد طابا مدينة حيدة للسياحة البيئية؟



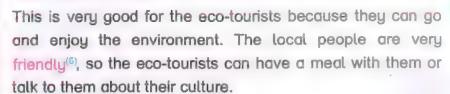


#### **Eco-tourism** in Egypt

Taba is an excellent(1) example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well.

You can find valleys(2), mountains, desert(3), and the sea there.

You can find fantastic wildlife(4) in Taba, like the Nubian ibex(5) and rare birds.



If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis (7), a village of round, very old buildings. They are

a great holiday!



**Nawamis Structure-**Sinai, Egypt

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking(9), and camping(10). They can stay in camps(11) and eco-lodges(12). You can find everything in Taba for



Camp in Sinai, Egypt

- ا- ممتار
- ۲- ودیاں
- ۳- صحراء
- ٤- حياة برية
- ٥- حيوان الوعل النوني
  - ٦- ودوييين
- ٧- نواميس (قرية بدوية
  - يجنوب سيناء)
  - ٨-مبهر/خلاب
  - 9-السير لمسافات
    - طويلة
- ١٠- إقامة المعسكرات/
  - التحييم
  - اا- معسكرات
  - ۱۲- نزل بیئی

#### Look at the flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba. Answer the questions: انظر إلى النشرة الإعلانية عن إجازة بينية في طايا وأجب عن الأسئلة،

- 1. Where is the main heading? How do you know?
- ما المنوان الرئيسي؟ كيف تمرف؟
- 2. How many sub-headings are there? What are they? كم عدد المناوين الفرعية؟ ما هي؟
- 3. Would you like to stay there? Why / Why not?
- هل تود الإقامة؟ لم/ لم لا؟

# Perfect<sup>(1)</sup>eco-tourism in Egypt



Meet the local people Talk to them about their

----



Enjoy the local Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.



Take part in exciting activities You can , swim, and dive.



Stay in our comfortable huts They are cool and



Enjoy the wildlife Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

- ۲- اسلوب حیاة
- ٣- ثقافة ع- بسير لمسافات طويلة
  - ٥- صديق للبيئة

# Activities



(	Choose	the	right	answer	from	a,	b	or	c:
---	--------	-----	-------	--------	------	----	---	----	----

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1. In Taba, you can stay in .....
  - n tourists

- 15 eco-lodges
- c tourism

- 2. The buildings in Taba are .....
- m fascinating
- (5) friendly
- **c** kind
- 3. Taba is a/an ..... eco-resort.
  - 15 harmful

c excellent

- 4. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving,
- and camping.

**o** hiking

round

**b** building

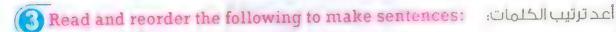
**c** writing

- 5. Hurghada is a/an .....
- **1** tourism
- b eco-resort
- **c** tourist

# 2 Circle the odd one out:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة؛

1	excellent	fantastic	wildlife	fascinating
Ż	diving	being	hiking	camping
3	friendly	cool	perfect	structure
4	Cairo	Sinai	Aswan	Valiey



- 1. an Taba excellent is eco-resort.
- 2. can wildlife find fantastic Taba in Yc.

- 3. camps stay can Eco-tourists in.
- 4. are The fascinating buildings.



# Key vocabulary





بحيرة





حزيرة

mountain

جبل

lake

waterfall Juli

island









forest قالذ

coral reefs شعاب مر جانية

Aswan boranical Garnen Temple of Philae حديقة النباتات بأسوان

معيد فيلة

	p ==	
	lots	الكثير
	sunset	غروب الشمس
	climate change	تغير المناخ
	greenhouse effect	الاحتباس الحراري
-	greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري
-	atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي
	suitable	مناسب
	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
	eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
	eco-tourist	۽ سائح بيني
	eco-resort	منتجع بيئي
	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
	environment	البيئة

		his v
	rare .	نادر
١	reign	فترة حُكم
1	normal	طبيعي / عادي
۱	livestock farming	تربية الماشية
	blanket	غطاء (بطانية)
ı	cause	···
	result	نتيجة
	pollution	التلوث
	mathematician	عالِم في الرياضيات
1	dive (1)	يغطس
	wildlife	حياة برية
	hotel	فندق

Grammar

قواعدلغوية

🍥 نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن شئ حدث واستمر في فترة زمنية في الماضي

🔘 يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلى:

Past ` continuous '

+ اسم مفرد / I / He / She / It + +verb + You / We / They / اسم جمع +

زمن الماضي المستمر

-The atmosphere was changing a little.

💿 يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر في الاستفهام كالآتي،

اسم مضرد / H / he / she / it / +verb+ + (كلمة استفهام) اسم جمع / + uou / we / they + اسم جمع

A: What were you having?

B: I was having lunch.

- No, I wasn't - Were you watching TV? - Yes, I was.

نضى الشعل في زمن الماضي المستمرنضع (not) بين (was / ware) والشعل،

+ اسم مفرد / I / He / She / It + verb + You / We / They / +

were not was not =

Keywords

/ when / اثناء / بينما while / as ماضی بسیط 🔷 ماضی مستمر while / as --> ماضي مستمر ماضي بسيط ماضي  يمكن أن نستخدم حروف الجر (by - in - on) مع وسائل المواصلات كالآتي: by وسيلة مواصلات (ليس بينهما قاصل) + إلا au par-hulli-by hus safe bu - in - on - ولكن نقول (on foot) بمعنى (سيرا على الأقدام). مع وسائل المواصلات

in - on

وسيلة مواصلات لا يمكن المشي داخلها (وبينهما فاصل .... an / the / my المرابع ا

- in a / my car - in a / the taxi

وسائل مواصلات يمكن المشي داخلها (بينهما هاصل) + on

- on the busy on the train-

on my bike / horse

- لاحظ:

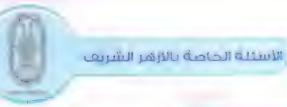








#### AZHAR EXERCISES



#### A- Listening

1	1
ŧ,	18
1	1

Listen and ch	pose:		ستمع واختر؛
1. Hanl was 2. Rasha	at 6 am. flowers in the garder	(sleeping - eating).(watering - planted	
	B- Language Fu	nctions	
Read and com	plete the dialog with	the words below:	قرأ وأكمل:
	helps - worried -	- pros	

A	: What are the	of eco-tourism?
B	: Itth	e environment.
	- No. of All St. and	

# A : What's the problem?

# : I'm feeling \_\_\_\_\_ C- Reading

#### 

Yesterday, I went to Taba with my father and my mother. Taba is a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

#### Choose the correct answer:

1. Yesterday, I went to	(Cairo - Taba - Alexandria)
2.1 went to Taba with my father and	(sister - brother - mother)
3. Taba is a part of	(England - Egypt - Libya)

#### D- The Reader

# Read and write (True) or (False):

اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:

True False

Amir sends a letter to the reptile clui	0	Amir	sends	d	letter	to	the	reptile	club
-----------------------------------------	---	------	-------	---	--------	----	-----	---------	------



# Hany is a geologist.

#### E- Usage

<b>(5)</b>	thoose the	right	answer	from	a, b,	or c:	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة
------------	------------	-------	--------	------	-------	-------	----------------------

1.T	he f	ox	4 4 4 4 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	sleep	oing.
-----	------	----	-----------------------------------------	-------	-------

a	were	
L.	44010	

to dre

- C was
- 2. Animals may lose their food because ...... die
- o plants

**b** rivers

c lakes

# Writing Skills



Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences



#### My city (Aswan)

My city is a fantastic city. There's lots to see.

It has museums and temples. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet. I love it very much.



#### Lesson 4

#### My community garden

2 Yesterday, I went to the community garden. I didn't like it at first. It was dirty and messy. I dug the soil and planted flowers. I became glad when the flowers got bigger..



#### Activity Unit 4

#### My favorite eco-resort (Taba)

Taba is my favorite eco-resort. I can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea there. I can find fantastic wildlife. I can enjoy the environment.

The local people are friendly.



# ON UNIT ACTIVITY



Omar was	his homework at 6 pm ų	yesterday.
<b>a</b> makehelp	making s people learn about new c	c made ulture.
O Pollution	Farming is a big problem on Earth.	<b>©</b> Tourism
Climate  Adel made many fr	Livestock iends at theg	© Coral arden.
o tourist	( community	<b>c</b> camping
Read and mate	ch:	:بات

# 1 Eco-tourism 1 Continue of the island 2 We travelled to the island 3 Tourists dive 2 Continue of the island 3 Tourists dive 4 I was 4 I was 5 The community garden was dirty 6 Down the desert. 6 Down the Red Sea. 7 Down the Red Sea. 8 Down the Red Sea. 9 Down the Red S

# Fill in the gaps using the words in the box:

املاً الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات الآتية؛

#### history - Island - lots

The Elephantine 

is a fantastic place. It is full of 

You can travel to it by boat. There's 

to see.

# Read the following and the questions:اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

The climate in an area usually takes a long time to change. Climate takes hundreds, thousands, or millions of years to change. The greenhouse gases include carbon dioxide and methane. These gases are like a blanket for the Earth, helping to keep the Earth warm enough. An increase in the greenhouse gases causes the Earth to become warmer. A warmer climate can affect the Earth badly.

A- Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, or c	•	<b>~</b>
1. Greenhouse ga	ses are like a1	for the Earth.	
o blanket	(5) sheet	Ccarp	et
2. The greenhouse	e gases causes the Earth to	become	2000400 H
o colder	<b>better</b>	c warr	mer
1. How long does 2. What are green	it take the climate to change	e?	
Bread and reore	ler the following to mal	ke sentences:	أعد ترتيب الكلمات:
1. are - people - T	he - friendly - local		
2. up - Earth's - goe	es - temperature - The.		
3. for - Tourism - jo	obs - people - gives - local.		
4. reefs - You - see	- coral - can - Red Sea - th	e - in.	
Write a paragr	raph of Five (5) senten		اکتب فقرة إنشائية ه
	Your favorite accome	ort (Taba)	مجاب اخر الوحدة
favorite	- valleys - wildlife - en		endly

Punctuate the following
-------------------------

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتن:

1. it s not as comfortable as normal

2. how is tourism important to egypt



# Myself and others

# Unit

# lobs we do

الوظائف التي نعمل بها







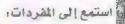
- 1 Listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
- " يستمع الطالب و يقرأ و يقوم بعمل بحث و يكتب عن أنواع الوظائف المختلفة في مصر القديمة.
- 2. Understand ecosystems.
- يفهم الطالب عن النظم البيئية.
- 3. Learn about jobs in tourism.
  - يتعلم الطالب عن الوظائف التعلقة بالسياحة.
- 4. Practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الروتين (العادات و المارسات المتادة).
- 5. Practice using must to talk about obligation.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام ( must ) (يجب أن) التعبير عن الالزام. 6. Understand and discuss a traditional tale.
- - " يفهم الطالب ويناقش إحدى القصص القديمة.
- 7. Learn to say words with diphthongs.
- يتعلم الطالب كيف يقول الكلمات التي بها ادغام (دمج نطق حرفين متحركين متلاصقين)
- 8. Understand pie charts.
- يفهم الطالب الرسوم البيانية الدائرية.
- Write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  - يكتب الطالب عن مميزات و عيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
- 10. Make a poster about teamwork.
  - يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق يعبر عن العمل الجماعي.





# Jobs in Ancient Egypt

# Key vocabulary















and the later of t تماثيل

grains حبوب

hieroglyphs اللغة الهير وغليفية

scribe كاتب (عند الفراعنه)

jewelry مصوغات











records سحلات

farmers فلاحين

paintings لوحات

craftsmen حرفيين

1.0. بذور الكتان

killful	ماهر
emale ruler	الملكة الحاكمة
economu	قتصاد



pharaohs الفر اعنة medicine دُخُل إيراد income

# Important jobs

	_	_	-		
octor				طبيب	
sherman				صياد	
aker				خباز	

farmer	فلاح
trader	تاجر
craftspeople	حرفيين

# Differ word

100	
75	
Good	

# غلطات اشرا

signs	علامات / رموز
crops	محاصيل
sandals	صندل
rows	صفوف
columns	امملة

wheat	نبح
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
basket	سلة
queen	ملكة
temple	معيد

# Unit 5 Jobs var en

# Adjectives

Listing

important	مام
successful	ناجع
colorful	كثير الألوان

expensive	غالى الثمن
ancient	قديم
medical	طبی

#### Conjugation of verbs BRANKS AND

# Regular verbs

مضارع Present

plant

cook

bake

consist of

respect

Past ماض planted respected cooked baked

consisted of

أفعال منتظمة

# irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Prese	nt مضارع	اض Past
become	يصبح	became
grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew
weave	ينسج	wove
spend	يقضى (وقت)	spent

# Study the following

يزرع

يحثرم

يطهي

يخبر

يتكون من

كان يعمل الناس في مصر القديمة بجد. . People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard.

People could work as fishermen. استطاع الناس أن يعملوا كصيادين.

Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt.

كان الفلاحين ذو أهمية كبرى في مصر القديمة.

Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt. تجلب الزراعة كثيراً من الدخل لمس.

Craftsmen made beautiful things. صنع الحرفيون أشياء جميلة.

Craftsmen wove beautiful clothes. قام الحرفيون بنسج ملابس جميلة.

Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs.

قضي الكتبة سنوات عديدة في تعلم الهيرو غليفية .

كان القدماء المصريون ناجحون جدًا. | The Ancient Egyptians were very successful

Hatshepsut was a famous female ruler of Egypt.

كانت الملكة حتشيسوت حاكمة مشهورة لمصير



Lesson 1

## Listen and read. Why couldn't many people work as scribes?: استمع واقرأ لماذا لم يتمكن العديد من الناس العمل ككتبة،

#### Jobs in Ancient Egypt

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen(1), bakers, doctors, and traders.

But most people worked as farmers.

Farmers were very important for Ancient

Egypt's economy(2). They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted (3), usually (4) like wheat, corn, and flax(5). They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen<sup>(6)</sup> were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures(?). They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. The craftspeople were skillful and everybody in the community respected them. Fewer people worked as scribes(8),

Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning

hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could wegan (9) baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become (11) in (10). One famous (11) in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

# Listen again and write T (True) or F (False): استمع مرة أخرى واكتب (صح) أم (خطا)

dr+d((0));;;;;;;		True	Folian
1	Everyone in Ancient Egypt could become a scribe.		Y F.
2	Craftspeople were respected in Ancient Egypt.		
3	Women worked at home only.		
4	Farmers could plant fruit, vegetables, and grains.		
<b>(5)</b>	There were very few jobs in Ancient Egypt.		



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, c. 1473-1458 BCE

> ٦- اقتصاد ۳- محاصیل 3- בעפי ه- بخور الكتان 1 - جر فدين ٧- تماثيل aus-A ۹- بسیح ا- فراعين (ملوك) اا-ملکه

ا- صيادون

## Jobs we do

Listen and repeat. Then match the words to their descriptions: استمع وردد ثم صل الكلمة بتمريفها:

#### doctor - craftsman - trader - scribe - hieroglyphs

- scribe People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.
- People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.
- ... If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.
- 4- ..... A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.
- ..... Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.
  - Look at these jobs. Choose one and write 2-3 descriptions, like the ones in Exercise 3

انظر إلى هذه الوظائف. اختر واحدة واكتب (٢-٣) جمل وصفية مثل التمرين رقم (٣):

#### fisherman - farmer - teacher

Farmers: People with this job were very important. They worked hard in the fields and planted many crops.

## Did you

#### هل تعلم؟ \know?

More than 25% of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt

أكثر من ٢٠٪ من المسريين يعملون في الزراعة ، فالزراعة تجلب دخلا



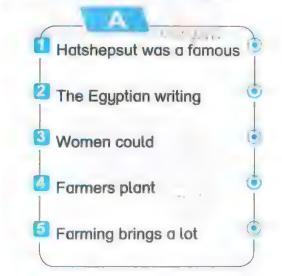
# ctivities

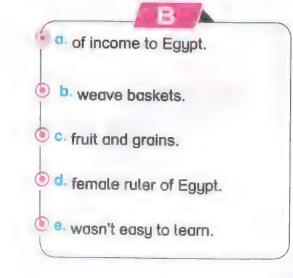
Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة؛

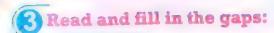
- 1. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's .... scribes c economy baskets 2. Craftsmen. beautiful paintings and jewelry. plant make C cook .... had to go to medical schools. O Doctors Scribes | Craftsmen 4. They planted crops, usually .....like wheat, corn and flax. craftsmen 10 argins c records 5. The craftsmen were very ..... and people respected them. expensive oncient and skillful 6. .....was a system of writing. People used it in Ancient Egypt. Hierogluphs Medicine C Pots
- Read and match:

أقرأ وصل:





# Unit (5) Jobs we do



اقرأ واملاً الفراغات؛

#### scribes - grains - skillful

Farmers were very important in Ancient Egypt. They planted many Oraftsmen were very ..... and everybody respected them. Fewer people worked as .....in Ancient Egypt.

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن؛



#### John in Ancient Egypt

farmers - grains - fields - scribes - learn





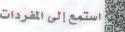
1. people in ancient Egypt worked hard

2. why does mustafa like clay

Lesson

## Ecosystems Part 1

## Key vocabulary





كابوريا



rocks صخور



sunlight ضوء الشمس



fish سمك



insect حشرة



sand رمل



seaweed طحالب/أعشاب بحرية



rainforest غابة مطيرة



Marine ecosustem النظام البيئي البحري

Desert ecosustem

النظام البيئي الصحراوي



**Ecosystems** 



Freshwater ecosystem النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة



Rockpool ecosystem النظام البيثي للبحيرات الصخرية

rockpool living

suitable non-living





### کلمات اخری 🚪 Other words

, in als

freshwater ماء عذب saltwater conditions خروف temperature

ctimate مناخ connection صلة / علاقة dolphin دولفين source

## Adjectives

natural

connected

طبيعي

صفات

different

مختلف

#### Conjugation of verbs

متصل

مزيف الاصعال

#### Regular verbs

افعالمنتظمة

Irregular verbs

افعال غير منتظمة

Present ومضارع

connect يتصل survive يبقى حيًا work connected survived worked

make يصنع give

made gave

#### 

living

something that is alive

so غير ص so

something that isn't alive

نظام بیئی ecosystem

all the animals, plants, rocks, etc.. in a place

بحيرة صخرية rockpool

a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.

## Study the following

The Nile River is the most important source of freshwater in larger.

نهر النيل هو المصدر الأكثر أهمية للماء العذب في مصر.

**2** Everything in the natural world is connected.

كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي مرتبط ببعضه البعض،

3 The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seawered

الكائنات الحية في البحيرات الصخرية هي الأسماك والكابوريا والأعشاب البحرية.

There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

يوجد العديد من أنواع النظم البيئية على كوكب الأرض،

S Plants need sunlight and water to survive.

تحتاج النباتات إلى ضوء الشمس والماء لتبقى على قيد الحياة،

Animals and plants need each other to live.

تحتاج الحيوانات والنباتات بعضها البعض للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

Trees give us oxygen.

تعطينا الأشجار الأكسجون.

The non-living things are rocks, water, sand and sunlight.

الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمال وضوء الشمس.

(عنصرا هاما في النظام البيئي... Climate is an important part of an ecosystem

Trees make the air cleaner.

تجعل الأشجار الهواء أكثر نقاءاً.

#### Think and say:

فكر وقل :

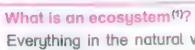
Think about the Nile River. It is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river. Name as many plants and animals that live in or near the river as you can.





استمع واقرأ وانظر. هل كل النظم البيئية نفس الشيء؟

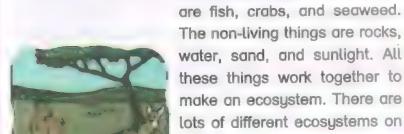
استمع إلى النص،



Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living (2) and non-living (3) things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool(4), or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest (5). The living things in a rockpool

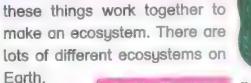


a freshwater ecosystem



a marine ecosystem

a desert ecosystem

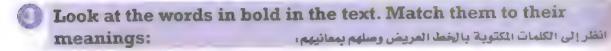




- ٤- بحيرة صخرية ٥- عابات الامازون الاستوائية



a rockpool ecosystem



		<b>B</b>
1 living	•	<ul><li>a. something that isn't alive</li></ul>
2 non-living	•	<ul><li>b. all the animals, plants, rocks,</li><li>etc., in a place</li></ul>
@ ecosystem		<ul><li>c. a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.</li></ul>
cockpool '		od. something that is alive



Are the things in Exercise 4 living or non-living? Write the words in the correct group: هل الأشياء في التمرين رقم (٤) كاننات حية أم غير حية؟ أكتب الكلمات في التصنيف السحيح،

F 1			
fish			
-			
	-		

Non-Li	vin	g ti	nic	ıg	5	جيا	-10		اب		کا
rocks									Ī	Ī	
	-		-	_				-	~	_	-
						-	٠ –	_	_	_	-
	- =		-						**	_	_

## Unit (5)

Listen and read. What do animals and plants need to survive?

أستمع وأقرأ. ماذا تحتاج الحيوانات والنباتات حتى تظل على قيد الحياة؟



۲- مىلسى

٣- طروف

٥- بدور

ع- يىقى على قىد الحياة



#### Why are ecosystems important?

Everything in the natural(1) world is connected. An ecosystem is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and

plants need each other to live. They also need suitable(2) conditions(3).

Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive<sup>(4)</sup>. They need food, water, and shelter. And they need the weather to be at the right temperature.

Plants need sunlight and water to survive. Some plants need animals, birds, and insects to carry seeds(5) to other areas so they can grow. They also need the right climate.

Climate is also an important part of an ecosystem. Trees give us oxygen. This makes the air cleaner and allows plants, animals, and humans to live in a comfortable environment.

Look at the photos of two ecosystems. Then complete the diagram with the words in the box:

أنظر إلى صور كل من النظامين البينيين، ثم أكمل الشكل بالكلمات التالية:

dolphins - fish - insects - monkeys - rocks - sunlight - water





sed dolphin



A LOTTE	TOTAL	
Choose the right a	nswer from a, b or c	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:
1is the co	nnection between living a	nd non-living things.
<ul><li>Rockpool</li><li>Everything in the natur</li></ul>	Ecosystem	© Desert
connected 3. Plants need	justing given given conditions to keep the	© worked
<ul><li>suitable</li><li>4. Animals and plants nee</li></ul>	(i) hard	© wrong
© love 5is a small	live ·	C carru
Desert	Ecosystem	© Rockpool
Read and match:		اً قر وصل:
Trees give us	a. differ	rent ecosystems on Earth.
The non-living things		ocks, water and sand.
Climate is	c. part	of an ecosystem.
There are lots of	d. need	each other to live.
Animals and plants	e. oxyge	en.

## Read and fill in the gaps:

اقياً واملاً الفراغات:

suitable - survive - temperature

Animals and plants are important for any ecosystem. They need • conditions to be safe. The world 9 ..... is sometimes bad for them. They need our help to 0 .....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسفلة.



## Unit 5 Julis we do

A Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. are - ecosystems - Why - important?

2. live - can - Some plants - desert - the - in.

3. animals - need - What - to - do - survive?

4. sunlight - Plants - to - need - survive.

5. What - is - ecosystem - an?

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن؛



#### Rockpool ecosystem

rocks - living - crabs - fish - seaweed



**6** Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1- dolphins don t live in the desert

2- what s an ecosystem

Lesson 2

## \* Ecosystems part 2









· Entra

ساحل





reeds نبات البوص

## Other Words & or ----

endangered

endangered	معرض لخطر الإنقراض
turtle	سلحفاة
hippo	فرس النهر
mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف
species	انواع / فصائل
bamboo	نبات الخيزران
corals	شعاب مرجانية

gazelles	غزلان
foxes	الثعالب
tamarisk	الطرفاء (شجرة نحيلة الأغصان)
bank	ضفة نهر
ibex	حيوان الوعل (ماعز الجبل البري)
habitat	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات
acacia	نبات السنط (شجرة الصمغ)





### Adjectives

منقرض

marine

بحري

### Conjugation of verbs الافعال

أفعال منتظمة

Past ماض

Regular verbs

مضارع Present include

یشتمل علی یجاور / یُحد

included bordered

بعيفات

Irregular verbs

أفعال غيرمنتظمة

Past ماض

Present مضارع

mean يقصد me

meant



border

endangered معرض لخطر الإنقراض means that there are not many of a plant or animal left in the world. This is because their habitat has been lost or because too many of them have been killed.

## Study the following

The banks of the Nuc Rhan Francis of Allier A specifies of animals.

يوجد بضفاف نهر النيل أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات.

There are more than 800 types of seaweed.

يوجد أكثر من ٨٠٠ نوع من أعشاب البحر.

About 90 of Egypt's land is desert area.

حوالي ٩٠ ٪ من مساحة مصر منطقة صحراوية.

There are different anim... In the little ort.

توجد حيوانات مختلفة في صحراء مصر.

Many water birds live in the reeds on the river bank.

يعيش العديد من الطيور في نبات البوص الموجود على ضفة النهر.

#### Read and write:

أقرأ وأكنب

Lesson 2

desert - marine - freshwater

الله النص الله النص النص الله النص

#### 1 Egypt's marine

Egypt's coast includes the Mediterranean Sea (1) and the Red Sea. In both of these seas, there are many different plants and animals. Some of them, like turtles, birds, and mangrove trees(2), are endangered(3). There are more than 800 types of seaweed and more than 200 types of coral(4).

#### 2 Egypt's \_\_\_\_ecosystem

About 90% of Egypt's land is desert areas. It looks like nothing can live in these areas, but there are many different animals in Egypt's deserts, such as camels, gazelles<sup>(5)</sup>, jackals, ibex<sup>(6)</sup>, and foxes. There are also some plants, such as tamarisk<sup>(7)</sup> and acacia<sup>(8)</sup>.

ecosystem

#### Arabic Meaning

ا- البحر الابيض المتوسط

- اشحار المانجروف

- معرض لحظر الانفراض

- شعاب مرضانیه

- عرلان - حیوان الوعل (ماعر الحیل

۷ - الطرفاء (شجرة تحيلة الاعضان)

٨- يبات السبط (شجرة الصمة)

#### 3 Egypt's \_\_\_\_ecosystem

The banks of the Nile River have many different species of animals and plants, like hippos and bamboo. There is lots of fresh water, not saltwater like the sea. Many water birds live in the reeds on the river bank. It's a good place for them because there are plenty of fish to eat.

### 2 Read again and circle the correct words:

أقرأ مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة،

- 1. Egypt borders two / three seas.
- 2. Turtles are an extinct / endangered species.
- 3. Ibex and foxes live / don't live in the desert.
- 4. Some / No plants can live in the desert.
- 5. The water in the Nile is freshwater / saltwater.
- 6. The river bank is / isn't a good place for birds.



# Activities



Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة؛

- includes the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. 1. Egypt's
- o coast

10 bamboo

- **c** tamarisk
- are endangered animals.
- **Banks**

Jackals

- **Reeds**
- .. means not many plants or animals are left.
- Different
- (b) Marine

- **©** Endangered
- on the river bank. 4. Many water birds live in the ...
  - @ reeds

oasts

**C** tamarisk

## Read and match:

أقروصل

- 1 About 90% of Egypt's
- 2 Egypt borders many different species of animals.
- 3 There are plenty
- The water in the Nile
- 5 The Nile River has

- (a) species of animals.
- b. two seas.
- (a) c. of fish to eat.
- od land is desert area.
- e. is freshwater.

## 

- 1. live the Turtles in sea.
- 2. eat from river Water birds fish the.
- 3. desert Foxes in live the.
- 4. are There in different Egypt's animals desert.

### Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

- 1. many animals live in the Nile river
- 2. fish and hippo.don t live in the desert

# Lesson

## Tourism helps our community

## Key vocabulary





Nubia النوبة



Karnak Temple معبد الكرنك





Abu Simbel

معيد أبو سميل

**Aswan Botanical** Garden حديقة النباتات بأسوان





The Great Temple of Ramses II معبد رمسيس الثانى الكبير





**Elephantine Island** جزيرة الفنتين

#### کلمات اخری 🌋 Other words



airport	مطار
monuments	آثار
welcoming	مُرَحِب

souvenir	مدية تذكارية
temple	معبد
site	موقع

## Unit 5 John we do

geography جغرافیا journey محلة طویلة boss رئیس عمال sunset غروب الشمس midday وسط النهار melon

#### John with:

tour guide
hotel manager
مدير فندق
waiter

chef

boat captain

zoo keeper

مرشد سياحي

due
hotel manager

due
الاه المباخ
مور نادل
مورت نادل

#### Adjectives



ودود amazing مذهل / مدهش sharp

enormous منظ مائل fun مَرِح historical

#### Conjugation of Verbs (Januarian

#### Regular verbs 2

أفعال منتظمة

move يتحرك / يمرك moved

prepare يجهز prepared

check يأكد prepared

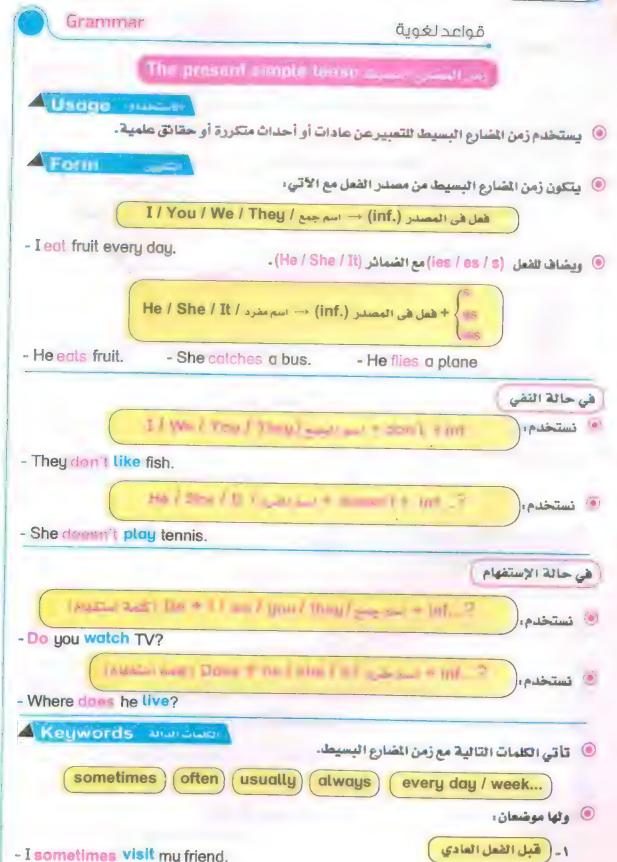
check يأكد studied

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Rnow يعرف
show يوضح / يعرض
fly يطير
catch يمسك / يلحق بـ wake up
forget

knew showed flew caught woke up forgot



## Unit 5 - John + 11 de l

#### بعد فمل (to be) في تصريفاته التالية are/is/ am

- They are usually late for work.

الفعل المنتهى بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف (ساكن) نحذف الـ (y) ونضع (ies) .

- He studies hard.

😃 ولكن إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضع (s) فقط ولا تحذف ال(y).

- He plays computer games.

🍳 الفعل المنتهى بالحروف الأتية (o - x - ch - sh - ss) نضيف للنعل (es) .

- He washes his hands.

#### must & mustn't

مصدر القعل + must

• نستخدم .must با must للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما:

- I must buy some oranges.

مصدر الفعل + mustn't

ونستخدم .must nol) mustn't + inf التعبير عن المنع أو النهي.

- We mustn't talk in the library.

must / mustn't بعد to لاحظ لا يأتي •

## Study the following

1 Three million people in Egypt work in tourism.

يعمل في مجال السياحة في مصر ثلاثة ملايين فرد.

A tour guide is an important job.

العمل كمرشد سياحي وظيفة هامة.

Tour guides are friendly.

المرشدون السياحيون ودودين.

Nubia has many historical monuments.

تمتاز النوبة بالعديد من الأثار التاريخية.

The Great Temple in Nubla is wonderful.

المعبد الكبير بالنوبة رائع،

**6** We bought souvenirs from the market.

قمنا بشراء الهدايا التذكارية من السوق،

Tt was the best day of our holiday!

لقد كان أفضل يوم في إجازتنا ا

The chef made us a delicious traditional dinner.

أعد لنا الشيف/ الطاهي عشاء تقليدنا لذبذا.



#### Listen and read. Underline all the jobs in the text as you hear them: أنصت وأقرأ، ضع خطا تحت كل الوظائف المذكورة في النص عند سماعك إياها،



Abu Simbel

Arabic Meaning

ا- أصحاب محلات

۲- بنین/ یعرض

٣- مرحبين

٤- معيد ٥-جزيرة فيلة

٦-زبادي

٧- علماء آثار ٨- هدايا تذكارية



#### My trip to Nubia with a tour guide

Today more than three million people in Egypt work in tourism. There are hotel managers, waiters, chefs, boat captains, hotel workers, farmers, drivers, and shop owners(1). All of these people help to make Egypt one of the world's best places to visit for a holiday. And of course, one of the most important jobs is a tour guide.

Tour guides show(2) tourists the country they are visiting.

They need to know about the places that the tourists want to visit, but they also need to be friendly and welcoming(3) so that the tourists have a good holiday. One place you will find amazing Egyptian tour guides is in

Nubia. Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places to see, like the Great Temple(4) of Ramses II, Elephantine Island, and the island of Philae(5). One of my favorite trips last year was to the small village of Abu Simbel. The hotel chef had prepared a delicious breakfast of bread, yogurt(6), and fresh fruit for us to eat before we left with Ali, our tour guide. Rami, the taxi driver, told us stories of old Nubia and its history all the way to Abu Simbel. The Great Temple is wonderful and Ali told us all about its history.

He knew such a lot and we learned so much from him. It's amazing to think that builders, architects, and archaeologists(7) were able to move the enormous temples! We also bought Souvenirs(8) from the market traders near the temples. Rami took us to a local restaurant where the chef made us a delicious traditional dinner and we watched the beautiful sunset over Abu Simbel. It was the best day of our holiday!







Read again and circle :

اقرا مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول b أو a

- 1. What is the main point in the first paragraph?
  - 10 to give a list of jobs in tourism
  - 10 to say that there are many different jobs in tourism
- 2. Why does the writer think that tour guides are important?
  - they work with drivers and big hotels
  - **because they know** the most about the sites in Egypt
- 3. Why does the writer tell us that the taxi driver 'told us stories of old Nubia'?
  - o to show that the writer had an interesting time on the journey
  - 10 to show that all taxi drivers are fun
- 4. Which people did the writer meet at Abu Simbel?
  - market traders
- **builders**
- 5. Why did Ali tell the writer about the builders, architects, and archaeologists?
  - Because they are part of the temple's geography.
  - Because they were able to do something very important with the temples.
- Imagine you are a tour guide in Egypt. Choose a good place for tourists. Find out some facts and other information. Write about it: تخيل انك مرشدًا سياحيًا في مصر. أختر مكانًا جيدًا للسياح. أعرض بعض الحقائق والملومات وأكتب عنه،



**Aswan Botanical Garden** 



Karnak Temple



Do you think is it important for people with jobs in tourism to be friendly? Why?



Temple of Philae



Abu Simbel



Look, read, and write. Use the correct form of the verbs in the box: انظر واقرأ واكتب استخدم المسيغة السحيحة للأنمال الأتية ا

ask - check - cook - cut - drive - open



1- I drive to work at 10 am.



3 - My boss ..... me to prepare the vegetables.



5 - At midday, the manager ......the restaurant.



2 - I ..... the menu and make sure we have the right food.



4- I ..... the vegetables with a sharp knife.



6 -We ...... lots of delicious food for our customers.





## Unit 5 Julis wil de

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the present simple:
- 1. Mrs Soha ...... (work) in a school.
- 2. My sister ..... (study) at Mansoura University.
- 3. We ..... (play) computer games at the weekend.
- 4. I ..... (eat) yogurt and melon for breakfast.
- 5. Mr Said ..... (catch) the bus to Cairo every morning.

#### Read. What is Walid's job?

أقرأ. ما وظيفة وليد؟

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!



Answer: zoo keeper

#### Complete the sentences with must or mustn't:

i must و i mustn't أو أكمل الجمل ب

- 1. I must do my English homework. ✓
- 2. You ..... walk on the grass. X
- 3. You .....look after the environment. ✓
- 4. Nadim ..... tidy up the kitchen. ✓
- 5. Nahla ..... wake her sick brother up. X
- 6. You ..... forget to take a hat today. X



		. con set on D
Choose the right	answer from a, b	فتر الاجابة الصحيحة
1. We loo	k after the environmer	nt.
o doesn't	(5) can't	<b>©</b> must
2. Mustafa bought	from Abu Sin	nbel.
temples	<b>b</b> souvenirs	<b>©</b> environment
3. Salma	her car to work every o	day.
o drives	<b>b</b> drive	<b>C</b> driving
4. I the ve	getables with a sharp	knife.
cutting \	(b) cut	cuts
5. People in Egypt are fi	riendly and	
o sharp	welcoming	csad
6. Children	listen to their parents	6.
o doesn't	<b>6</b> must	<b>G</b> aren't
7. Walid doesn't	to school early.	
arrive	<b>b</b> arrives	<b>c</b> arriving
8 Hany st	udy English?	
O Do	(5) Is	© Does
Read and match:		اقرأ وصل:
A		B
The taxi driver	• • a	. tourists the country.
2 Tour guides show	• b	great monuments.
3 Elephantine Island	<b>o</b> c	drives people.

4 Nubia has many

6 Mustafa must do

od. his homework.

e. is a historical place.

## Unit 5 Jobs we do

🚺 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. clean - must - teeth - Taqwa - her.

2. are - They - welcoming - friendly - and.

3. helps - country - Tourism - our.

4. the - day - best - It - was - of - our - holiday.

Read and complete the sentences:

أقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

ELECT

- 1. He ...... (play) football in the club on Fridays.
- 2. Magda ...... (must) go to school late.
- 3. Fahd ..... (eat) bread and cheese every day.
- 4. Hoda ..... (mustn't) study for the exam.

## **5** Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

- 1. mustafa and muhammad must look after Heba
- 2. what does abdullah do

Lesson

## The Ant and the Grasshopper







بطن (النحلة)



ant نولة



grasshopper چرادہ



er fence سور

hop away rest against یقفز بعیدا یستریح مستندا علی relaxing boring

مسترخی ممل (غیر ممتع)

## Adjuctives بيغات

lazy	كسول
cold	بارد
surprised	مندهش
full of	ممثلیء ب

strange غريب hungry عومان lovely

## کلمات اخری 😸 Other words

butterfly	فسراشية
fall	فعمل الخريف
spring	فعمل الربيع
suddenly	فجأة
soon	قريبا
sound	صوت

conversation	محادثة
winter	فصل الشتاء
inside	بالداخل
garden	حديقة
field	حقل
have fun	يستمنع بوقته

#### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Past ماض

Irregular verbs

افعال غير منتظمة

nesent مضارع

يستمر / يواصل carry on

harvest

reply

ignore

carried on

يطن (صوت النحلة) buzz buzzed

> يحصيل harvested

> > replied

prepared

hopped away

knocked on

يرد

يتجاهل ignored

prepare يجهز

يقفز بعيدا hop awau

knock on يطرق الباب

understand

Present مضارع

hear

Past ماض

heard

بكتشف find out found out

understood

تشرق الشمس shine

shone

**Language Functions** 

وظائف لغوية

What (am, is, are) + فاعل + v + ing?

- What are the butterflies doing?

- The butterflies are flying in the sun.

للسؤال عن أحداث تقع الأن

Why don't you + inf مصدر القمل?

- Why don't you visit Luxor with me?
- Sure, I think it'll be fun.
- Thank you, but I need to do my homework.

للتعبيرعن الاقتراح

للإجابة بالموافقة ء

وللإجابة:

وللإجابة بالاعتذاره

## Study the following

1 The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers.

الشمس ساطعة والحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور.

🔞 It's a lovely day.

إنه يوم جميل.

Why don't you stop working?

لم لا تتوقف عن العمل؟

We must think about the future.

علينا أن نفكر في المستقبل.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.

يقضى ذكر الجراد الكسول معظم وقته مسترخيًا.

أريد أن أستمر في عملي،

ii) It's very important to work hard.

من المهم أن تعمل بجد.

The unit doesn't stop working.

النملة لا تتوقف عن العمل.

Listen and read. What does the Grasshopper want to do?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا يريد ذكر الجراد أن يفعل؟





It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields(1) and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects(2) to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.



The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work.

Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound(3). He wants

ا-الحقول ۱- حشرات ۳- صوت

to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.



"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies (4) the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper.

"Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.



"But working is so boring," replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all

٥- بقمز بعددا

We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away (5).



Soon, it is fall (6). The ant has worked hard and all his crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested (7) all the food and taken it inside for the winter.

٦- فصل الخريف ٧-حصد ٨- فحاة 9- يطرق الباب



Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hunary. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any.

have to do.

Suddenlu (8), he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on (9) the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

#### Read and circle:

أقرأ وضع دائرة،

- 1. The grasshopper is surprised when he sees the ant because ...
  - 13 The ant doesn't like playing football.
  - The ant is ignoring him.
  - The ant is working hard to prepare for winter.
  - The ant prefers to play with other insects.

- 2. The Ant and the Grasshopper teaches us ... that ants are boring insects.
- that it's important to work to prepare for the future.

5. What do you think the grasshopper will do next spring?

- 13 that some insects work harder than others.
- that it's important to have fun every day.

3 Discuss these questions with a partner:	ن الأسئلة مع زميل،	تاقش
1. What did the ant do during the spring?		
2. What did the grasshopper do during the spring?		
3. Was the ant prepared for the winter?		
4. Was the grasshopper prepared for the winter?		



/an /	101	
down	أسفل	why
town	مدينة	light
brown	بنی	buy
loud	عالى الصوت	eye
mouse	فأر	, <b>tr</b> y

/ai /y igh		- /m/	- /si/oy - oi -	
hy	لماذا	<b>b</b> oy	ولد	
ght	ضوء	enjou	يستمتع بـ	
uy	یشتری	point	يشير	
ye	عين	toy	لعبة	
y	يبجرب	noise	ضوضاء	

- لاحظ في الجزء السابق كل صوت والكلمات والحروف التي تمثله.
- ندرس في هذا الدرس الأصوات المدمجة (المركبة) Diphthongs حيث تتكون من نطق حرفان متحركين جاءا في كلمة وليس بينهما فاصل ونتج عنها صوت جديد.
- فمثلاً كلمة (town) لايفصل بين الحرفين المتحركين بحرف ساكن فيكونا مقطعًا صوتيًا واحدًا.

## Jobs vin do

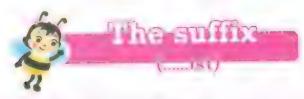
Listen and repeat:

انصت وردد،

(1) brita down Whu Light eniou town

Say. Write the words in the correct group in Exercise 1: قل. اكتب الكلمات حسب المجموعة المسحيحة وفقًا للتمرين رقم (١)،

> J. Toper DOT OF 1 r unitset III IBUC 7 try C- I carl



- اللاحقة عبارة عن حرف أو مجموعة أحرف تضاف إلى نهاية بعض الكلمات فتغير معناها.
- وندرس هنا اللاحقة ( 🕬 -) التي تعني أن شخص ما يقوم بوظيفة معينة ونستخدمها في الكلمات التي تدل على الوظائف. فمثلاً كلمة (journal) يقصد بها جريدة وبعد إضافة (اقا) إليها تتغير إلي كلمة (المتحديد) وتعنى (صحفي).

#### (ist) words



bolologist عالم أحياء



planist عازف بيانو



journalist منجثى



scientist عاثم



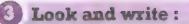
receptionist موظف استقبال



dentist طبيب أسنان

#### Lesson 4

انظر واكتبء





She's a biolog .....



She's a pian .....



She's a journal ......



He's a reception ......



He's a scient ......



# CLIL: MATH

الرسوم البيانية الدائرية Pie charts

This is a pie chart

- ◄ الرسم البياني الدائري هو طريق لعرض المعلومات:
- ◄ حيث نقسم الدائرة الى أجزاء حيث يمثل كل جزء معلومة ما فلو فرضنا اننا نريد تمثيل الاتي شخص يقضى ٨ ساعات في عمل اشياء مختلفة
  - ٤ ساعات للمذاكرة
  - ٢ ساعة للرياضة
  - ٢ ساعة للموانة
  - ◄ يكون تمثيلها برسم بياني دائري كالتالي:











## Unit 5 Jobs we do

A pie chart is a way of showing information. Look. What is the most popular job?:

الرسم البياني الدائري وسيلة لعرض المعلومات . أنظر ما هي الوظيفة الأكثر شيوعًا؟،

	ant te do?
police officer	16
eacher	24
farmer	20
animal keeper	8
dentist	13
doctor	19

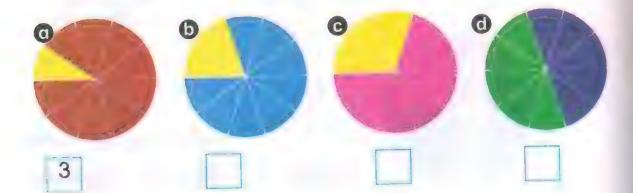


Match the tables to the pie charts:

صل الجداول بالرسم البياني الدائري:

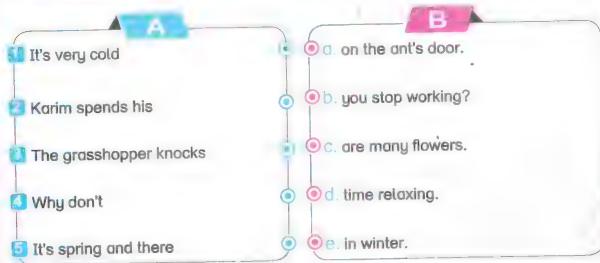
- انظر إلى الأرقام التي تمثل الرسم البياني الدائري ومن خلالها ستعرف ما تمثله كل دائرة.

- 1- Do you want to work prefuero el culdinis? indoors outdoors
- 2- Do you want to wear a uniform at work? yes 8 no
- 3- Be you worth to work with ar ols? yes no
- 4- Do you want to work in an office? 5 ues 5 no





Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة؛ 1. My garden has a big ...... around it. **6** bee (a) feince 2. The ..... are buzzing. **D** bees ( cats dogs . 3. I don't have time to play. I want to .. on with my work. 1 put to carru ( cru 4. I have a toothache. I am going to the ...... **G** dentist **D** pianist iouranalist 5. .....on the door before you enter a room. **Relax** 10 Hop Knock اقرأ وصل: Read and match:



Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات؛

iournalist - lazy - carry on

Hamdy is very active. He is never • at school. He likes to

his work all the time. He dreams to be a



## Unit 5 Jobs w do

Match:

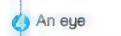
صل:











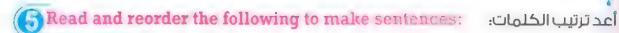












- 1. day a It's lovely.
- 2. work He like doesn't to.
- 3. think must We the future about.
- 4. flying The butterflies are the in ski.
- 5. don't work and I'm I hungry now.

### Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1. my friend salma wants to be a doctor
- 2. what did amr do in the spring

# LESSONS

## Writing

لا أمانع

## Key vocabulary







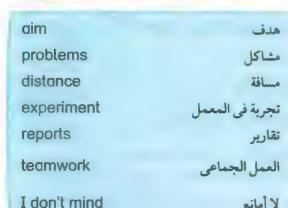
طبیب بیطری

The countryside

computer programmer مبرمج كمبيوتر

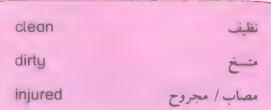
operation عملية جراحية

### کلمات اخری 🦣 Other words



keen on	حريص على
scare	يخبف
solutions	حلول
teammates	زملاء الفريق
tropical	استواثي
concert	حفل موسيقي
outdoors	في الخارج (خارج المباني)
office job	وظبفة داخل مكتب

## Adjectivos



keen on	حريص على
younger	أصغر سنًا
early	مبكرا



#### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

solve

mind

prefer

إيحل مشكلة

Past ماض solved يمانع minded يفضل preferred worked out workout يجدحل

win

مضارع Present bring يكتب write get sick

ماض Past brought wrote got sick won

#### **Language Functions**

وظائف لغوية

يفوز

Pould you prefer / like to + inf. مصدر القعل?

💿 السؤال عن التفضيل في أعمال / أشياء.

-Would you like / prefer to work as a vet?

📵 هل تفضل العمل كطبيب بيطري؟

Yes, I'd like / prefer to. I can work with animals.

-No, I'd prefer not to. - I can't work with animals. الاجابة بالنفيء

## السؤال عن التغضيا

## Study the following

I work with animals and I love my job.

2 I help to make animals better.

1 love the countryside.

What's the worst part of the job?

I loved playing computer games.

6 These are 16 people in my team.

I like travelling long distances.

(a) I wanted an office job.

أعمل في مجال الحيوانات، وأحب عملي . أساعد في جعل الحيوانات أفضل.

أحب الريف.

ما هو أسواء ما هي العمل؟

كنت أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

يوجد ١٦ فرد في فريقي،

أحب السفر إلى مسافات بعيدة،

أردت وظيفة في مكتب.

Lessons 586

I'm good at making new friends.

I work in a team for the school concert.

أعمل في فريق للحفل الموسيقي المدرسي،

اني جيد في تكوين صداقات جديدة.

1 You can't win a football match by yourself. لا تستطيع الفوز بمباراة كرة القدم بمفردك.

Read. What are Rana and Sherif's jobs?

أقرأ، ما هي وظائف رنا وشريف؟

استمع إلى النص:

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured<sup>(1)</sup>, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring(2) their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation(3), the room has to be very, very clean.



on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind<sup>5)</sup>! I lived

on a farm when I was younger, so I'm used to it(6), and I love the countryside. What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!



Rana is a doctor / (vet

ا- مصاب

٦- يحضر

۴- عملية حراجية

٦- اعتدت على الامر

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare(1) me! I'm not keen on(2) being outside, so I wanted an office job(3).

When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also

really enjoy solving problems(4). So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree(5), but we work out the best solutions(6).

۲- جريض على ٣- وطيعة مكتيبة ٤- حل المشاكل

Sherif is a computer programmer / vet.

Read again and answer:

أقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب

1. What does Rana like about working with animals?

2. Why did Sherif not want to work with animals?

## 5 John we do

3. Would you preter to have Rana's job or Sherif's job? Why?

Read the ideas in the box and write about a job you want and a job you don't want. Give reasons. Write 30 - 40 words:

أقرأ الألانا، المربوده بالسندوق وأكتب عن وظيفة ترغب فيها وأخرى لا ترغب فيها. أعطى الأساب. أكتب من ٣٠ إلى ١٠ كلمة ،

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. Think about ...

- being indoors or outdoors
- traveling long distances
- getting up very early
- writing reports
- meeting / talking to new people

It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. Think about ...

- solving problems
- helping sick people / animals
- making new friends
- reading tots of information
- working in a team

When I'm older, I want to be a ... because ... I think this is a good job for me because I like ... . I'm good at ... and I enjoy ... .

I don't want to be a ... because I'm not good at ... . Also, I don't really enjoy ...



Read. Can you think of other times when you work in a team? Do you like it?

افرا، هل بمكنك أن يمكر في أوقات أخرى عندما كنت تعمل فيها في فريق؟ هل تحب الأمر؟

#### **Teamwork**

I hack in a team in science when we're doing an experiment



I work in a team when I'm playing football



I work in a team when I help Momin the sitchen at home



I work in a tecto for the same of THOUSE .

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together (2). For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your teammates (3) to do this. You can't win a football match by uourself!

ا د فالماعر سيسان 1001 griallelloj "

4-	Andrew States for the Angelow	0169
Choose th	e right answer from a, b	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة: or c:
1.A	helps to make animals bett	er.
o vet	football player	c computer programmer
2. The operation	on room must be	
o dirty	<b>b</b> the worst	c dean
3.I love	new friends.	
o doing	<b>b</b> making	<b>c</b> working
4. You can't	a match by yourself	f.
o bring	<b>b</b> write	<b>©</b> win
5. He is clever.	. He canout th so	lution.
1 help	(5) work	c agree
Read and	fill in the gaps:	اقرأ واملاً الفراغات؛
	help - vet - sid	ck .
I love all kinds	of animals. When I'm older, I v	vant to be a 🐽I enjoy
orking with 👵 🏎	animals. We should	•them at all times.
Read and re	eorder the following to mak	أعد ترتيب الكلمات: ee sentences:
1.want - an - jo	ob - I - office.	
2. make - anima	als - <u>I</u> - help - to - better.	

ساعد طفلك في التمامل مم مثل هذه الاستلة. . . Help your child deal with such questions

4. are - 16 people - in - There - my - team.

3. wants - be - Sally - to - a - programmer - computer.



Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



#### Mujob

vet - kind - check - better - sick - like



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

# distrello: I m Mohamed

flection than

2. where does all have lunch



#### **Jobs in Ancient Egypt**



sculptures تماثيل



grains حبوب



hieroglyphs الغة الميروغليفية



scribe كاتب (عند الفراعنه)



jewelry مصوغات



farmers فلاحين



paintings لوجات



craftsmen حرفيين

**Ecosystems** 



records سجلات



flax بذور الكتان



Marine ecosystem النظام البيثى البحرى



Freshwater ecosystem



Desert ecosystem النظام البيئى الصحراوي النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة



Rockpool ecosystem النظام البيئي ليركة مياه صخرية



crab كابوريا



rocks صخور



sunlight ضوء الشمس



fish سمك



rainforest غابة مطيرة



insect حشرة



sand رمل



seaweed اعشاب بحرية / طحالب

#### 5) John we do Unit

#### Conjugation of verbs للهربات الضبال

#### Regular verbs

افعال منتظمة

#### irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

plant يزرع respect يحترم 345 prepare يستمر في carry on harvest يتحصد

#### Past ماض

planted respected prepared carried on harvested knocked on

#### مضارع Present

يصبح become ينسج weave يقضي (وقت) spend يوضح / يعرض show يغادر / يترك leave understand يفهم shine

#### Past ماض

became wove spent showed left understood shone

#### Grammar

يطرق (باب) knock on

قواعدلغوية

#### The present simple tense البسيط

#### At Unitable Comment

🧿 يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية. 📗 🔀

#### Form

يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل.

## قمل في المصدر(inf.) → اسم جمع / You / We / They

- I ect fruit.

(He / She / It) مع الضمائر (ies / es / s).

## He / She / It / اسم مفرد + s / es / ies + s / es / ies

- He eats fruit.

- She catches a bus.

- He flies a plane

#### must & mustnit

- I must buy some oranges.
- التعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما must + inf. نستخدم
- We mustn't talk in the library. للتعبير عن المنع أو النهي (must not) mustn't + inf. ونستخدم

#### Pronunciation

#### /ab /aw - ou

اسفل down town brown Loud عالى الصوت mbuse

## /at /y - igh

لماذا whu light ضوء يشترى buy عين eye try يبحرب

#### 101/0y - 0i

ولد boy enjoy point يشير لعبة toy ضوضاء noise

# Writing Skills

## مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

#### Latinger I

#### Jobs in Ancient Egypt

There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. Farmers grew grains. They worked in fields. Few people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write.



#### Lesson 2

#### Rockpool ecosystems

This is a rockpool ecosystem. The rockpool is a small area of water with rocks. It has living things in it. There are crabs, fish and seaweed. They are amazing things.



#### Lessens 586

#### The vet

My name is Hisham. I work as a vet. I like helping a lot of kinds of animals. When animals get better, I feel so happy. I really like my job.



#### **Activity Unit 5**

#### A trip to Nubia

Last week, we visited Nubia. It had many historical places. We visited Abu Simbel Temple. In Aswan, we went to the Botanical Garden. The trip was really great.







## الأسئلة الخاصة بالأرهر الشريف AZHAR EXERCISES

#### A- Listening



The state of the s	استمع وأختر:
1. Plants need sunlight and	(air - water - food)
	(monkeys - lions - hippos)
2. Walid looks after	

#### أقرأ وأكمل: Read and complete the dialog with the words below:

#### craftsman - doing - homework

A: What are you?	ig my •
A: What do you want to be?  B: I want to be	be d

#### C- Reading

#### أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة؛ Read the following text and answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children.

Choose the correct answer:	
1. Ancient Egyptian women worked at	(farmer - home - school)
2. Women cooked	(meals - games - books)
3. Egyptian women took care of their	lears - children - team)
D- The Reader	
Read and write (True) or (False):	اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:
	True False
Hany is a geologist.	resource plants of the second

#### E- Usage

#### اختر الاجابة الصحيحة: 6 Choose the right answer from a b, or cr

1. The boys are	football.	
a flying .	<b>b</b> swimming	c playing
2. We mustn't	in the library.	
o talks	talk talk	c talked

Hany says that all reptiles are dangerous.



# Activity

ON UNIT

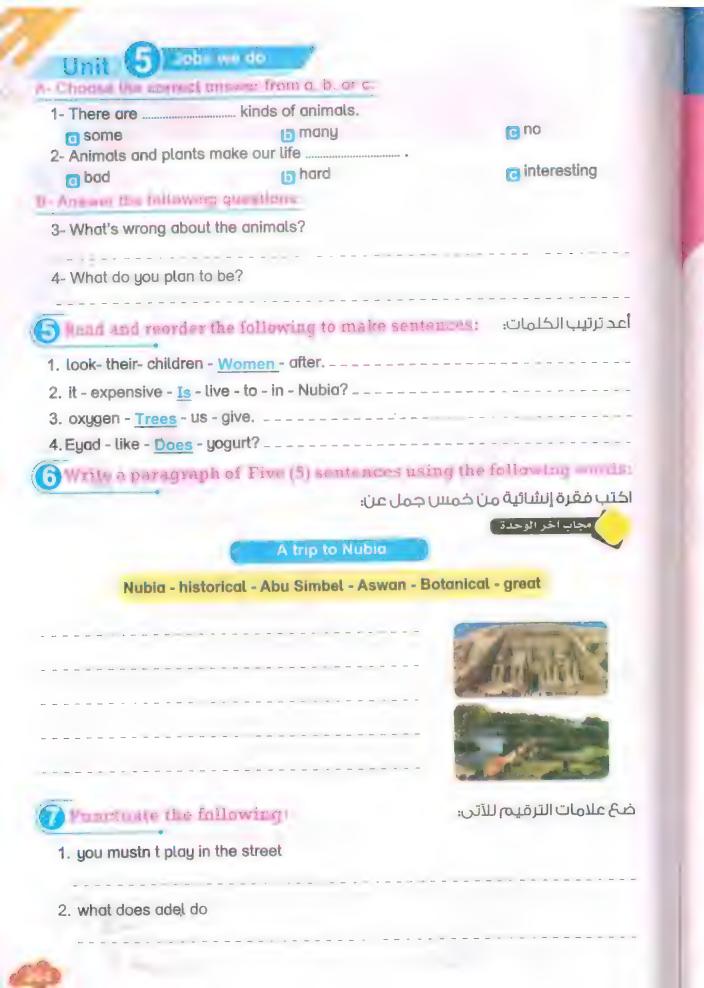
Choose the right a	nswer from	n a, b, or c: جابة الصحيحة	اختر الاد
1. Wheat, corn and flax are	called	1410002450000000 0	
vegetables 2. It is hot. You	grains forget to tal	c fruit ke a hat today.	
must , works in	<b>5</b> should a hotel.	c mustn't	
doctor  4 We bought some	5 receptioni from N		
souvenirs  5. Sherif a bi	fences us to his schoo	c bees ol every day.	
catch catch	(5) catches	c catching	
Read and match:		:ب	اقرأ وص
A		( B	7
Plants need sunlight		a. travel by boats.	
2 Traders sometimes		b. to live.	
Camels live in		© c. many places.	1
<b>Tourists visit</b>		od, a lot of crops.	,
5 Farmers grow		e. the desert.	1
Read and fill in the	gaps:	للا الفراغات؛	أقرأ وأم
	souvenirs - to	urists - buy	
Egypt is famous for its	historical plac	es. Many 🕦 visit it to	enjoy
		fts to take them home. These gifts	
called (1)			
Read the following		ver the questions: رثمأجبعن الأسئلة: plants in the world. They make o	

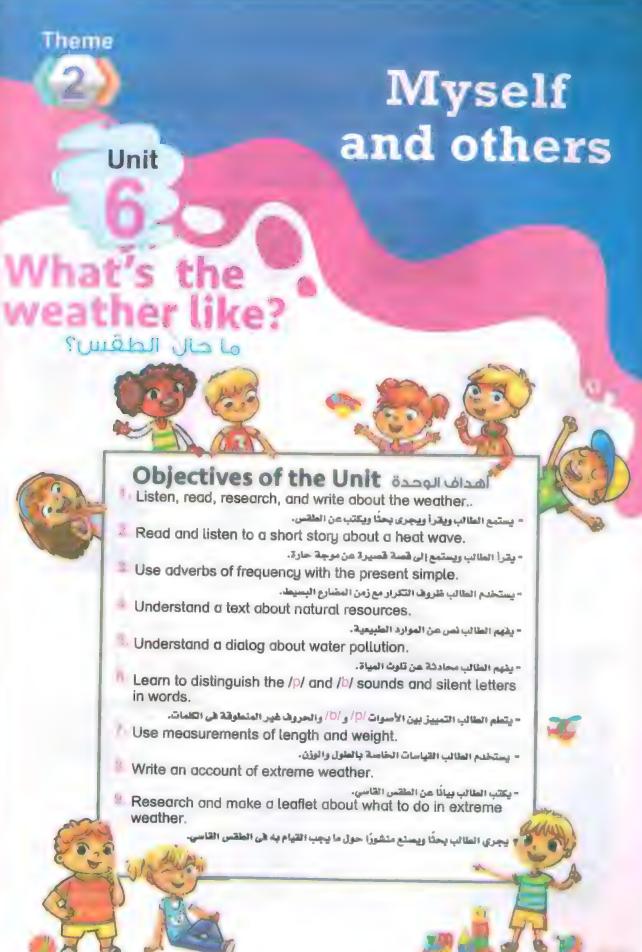
Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

ecosystems and help these animals. The world should help, too.

interesting. Some of these animals and plants are endangered. They need our help to survive in better and suitable conditions. So I plan to be a scientist to study different









## \* The weather

## Key vocabulary







cloud

سحابة





rain

مطر



cloudy ملبد بالغيوم

rainu ممطر







الشمس



windy wind عاصف (شدید الریاح) رياح

sunnu مشمس







snow جليد

ice ثلج

rainbow قوس قزح

storm عاصفة

## خلمات آخری 💍 Other words

presenter	أ مُقدِّم برنامج
weatherwoman	خبيرة الأرصاد الجوية
news	أخبار
normal	طبيعى
shade	ظل
special climate	مناخ خاص
variety .	ر تنوع

night	الليل
keep cool	بحافظ على برودته
warm	دافئ
per year	کل عام
around	حوالي
day	النهار
degree	درجة الحرارة

#### Conjugation of verbs

John Hoal

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

- U		- Date
Present	مضارع ا	Past ماض
believe	يعتقد/يصدق	believed
ask	يسأل	asked
call	ينادى	called
rain	تمطر	rained

Regular verbs

Present	امدان
bring	يحضر
come .	يأتى
fall down	bēm
getup	ينهض
hear	يستمع
run	يجرى

r	Past ماض	
1	brought	
	came	
	fell down	
	got up	
	heard	
	ran	

## Study the following

🚺 I m bringing you be now to the weather in Egypt today.

- أنقل لكم اليوم أخبار الطقس في مصر،

It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

سيكون الجو ممطرًا في القاهرة،

(3) How often does it rain in Cairo?

- كم مره تمطر في القاهرة ٩

(d) It's never very cold in Shum C'-Unean, but today we have some ice.

- لايكون الجو باردًا جدًا في شرم الشيخ، ولكن اليوم لدينا بعض الثلج.

5 Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

- ستواجه الأقصر عاصفة، لذا ابق في المنزل!

6 We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt.

- لدينا تنوع رائع في الطقس في مصر،

The desert has a very special climate.

- الصحراء لها مناخ ذات طبيعة خاصة للغاية.

8 It was not and sunny last weekend and I stayed at home.

- لقد كان الجو حار ومشمس نهاية الاسبوع الماضي ومكثت بالمنزل.

The Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt

- نهر النيل ذو أهمية عند الجميع في مصر،

Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo.

- الاسكندرية لديها حوالي ثمانية أضعاف الأمطار في القاهرة،



It's going to be + المكان + حالة الطقس

6 What's the mediter line?

للتنبؤ عن حالة الطقس

-It's gains to be hot in Egypt.

Language Functions

💿 نستخدم،

لاحظ الفرق بين (جليد Show) و (ظج ١٤٠٥) حيث نستخدم كلمة (جليد Shim) لوصف الجليد المتساقط من السماء وأعلى قمم الجبال ويكون لونه أبيض أما كلمة (ثلج ١٤١) تصف الماء المجمد ويكون شفاف.

Look and write:

انظرواكتب

cloud - ice - rain - rainbow - snow - storm - sun - wind















انظر وصل: 1 cloudy 2 sunny 3 windy 4 rainy 5 ice

Listen and circle.

6 storm

Look and match:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

عما يتحدثون،

#### - What are they talking about?

**a** weather in four cities in Egypt (5) weather in five cities in Egypt

Weatherwoman: Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of

the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

Presenter : Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always

sunny there!

Weatherwoman: I know, but today it's rainy.

Presenter : What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

Weatherwoman: It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have

some ice.

Presenter : I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?

Weatherwoman: It's going to be windy. That's normal - it is sometimes

windy in Alexandria.

Presenter : Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?

Weatherwoman : Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm,

so stay at home!

## Unit 6) What He -- has thorse

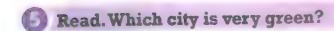
listen again and complete the table: استمع إلى النص مرة أخرى، ثم أكمل الجدول،

City

Cairo

Weather

rainy



اقرأ. أي مدينة تعد الأكثر خضرة،

Arabic Meaning

٣- درجات الحرارة

٥- ثمان مرات

ا- تنوع

آ- حاف

POLE -E

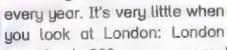
#### The weather in Egypt

استمع إلى النص: ﴿ وَاللَّهُ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ النَّاسِ ا

We have a nice crimin(1) of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry(2). We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 communication in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to ground 12 degrees.

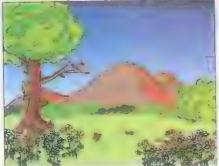
The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 degrees. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo - there's only about 25 mm of rain



has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important(4) for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south.

By the sea, it rains a lot more - Alexandria has around eight times(5) more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!



### Read again and write the places:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأكتب الأماكن ،

- 1. It has 25 mm per year.
- 2. It's very dry. It's very hot in the day and very cold at night.
- 3. It rains a lot about eight times more than Cairo.



## The weather part 2

Key vocabulary



tornado إعصار



sandstorm عاصفة رملية



tidal wave موحة المد والجزر





فيضان





shade

استمع إلى المفردات:

strong winds / storm

رياح قوية / عاصفة



heat wave موجة حارة

### Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

cry

Present knock stay reply

## أفعال منتظمة

ماض Past knocked stayed replied

#### Irregular verbs

charittenance.

Present Present become feel know

## أفعال غير منتظمة

ماض Past became يصبح felt يعرف knew



A heat wave:

It's when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything.

## Study the following

A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high.

- الموجة الحارة تحدث عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بدرجة كبيرة.

We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.

- لقد مكثنا في الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء.

We came back on the shady side of the street.

- عدنا من الجانب الذي به ظل في الشارع.

4 The very hot summer became a heat wave.

- أصبح الصيف الحار جدًا موجة حارة.

6 Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s.

- السيدة سهير هي سيدة عطوفة في السبعينات من عمرها.

### Look and write:

انظر واكتب

flood - heat wave - sandstorm strong winds / storm - tidal wave - tornado







tornado







Lesson 1

ا- موجة حارة

۲- ظل

٣- متدر

٦- صرخة

9- بالجوار

٨- مفتوح قليلا

٤- تنعشنا

ه- الجانب الذي به ظل

٧- في التسمينات من عمرها

Read Talia's story. What did she and her friend do?

اقرأ قصة تاليا. ماذا فعلت هي وصديقتها؟

#### My heat wave(1) story

استمع إلى النص:



The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade(2) and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the stands to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to could be stored. We went to the store. We came back on the snady side(5) of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a 11 (6). Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s(7) and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open(8), so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!'

We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby9). 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit. She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she

felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!



Read again, and put the sentences in the correct order:

اقرأ مرة أخرى، ثم ضع الجمل في الترتيب الصحيح ،

a. It was a very hot day.

b. Talia's mom asked them to go to the store.

C. Mrs Sohair was lying on the floor.

d. Mr Monib and the girls helped Mrs Sohair.

They were on the street and heard a cry.

Talia and Lamia stayed in the shade at home.

Did you

هل تعلم؟ \know

The hottest day in Egypt was 51.1° in Aswan. أكثر يوم حرارة في مصر كانت درجة الحرارة ١,١٥ درجة في أسوان.



# Activities



Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- 1. It's going to be .....in Cairo
  - a rain

(b) cloud

- **C** rainy
- 2. We have ----- summers in Egypt-
- a rainy

hot

- Cold
- 3. It's very ..... at night in the desert
  - cold

hot

- **sunny**
- 4. A .....is when the temperature goes very high.
- tornado

**b** flood

- heat wave
- 5. Now the temperature in Cairo is 27 .....
- degrees

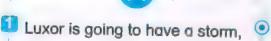
marks

**C** times

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:





- By the sea
- Our winters are
- We stay in the shade
- How often does it



- when it is very hot.
- b. cooler in Egypt.
- © C. rain in Cairo?
- od. it rains a lot more.
- so stay at home!

Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

cold - hot - desert

It's very • ..... during the day and very • ..... at night.

Help your child deal with such questions. الاستنة. طفلك في التمامل مع مثل هذه الاستنة.

#### Lesson 1

أعد ترتيب الكلمات: Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. windy - Alexandria - is - sometimes - It - in.

2.it - Imw - rain - does - Cairo - in?

3. weather - Im - in - a nice - have - Egypt.

4. climate - I - special - a very - desert - has.

Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



#### Thu seems.

climate - hot - desert - cold - night - day

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- it's going to be rainy in cairo

2- what about alexandria

## How often do you ....?

#### Grammar

قواعدلغوية

#### The present simple رمي اللسارة النسيط

#### ظروف التكرار Adverbs of frequency

@ تُسْتَخْدُم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادة بعد ( Verb

to be) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي ،

100%	80%	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
داثمًا	عادة	غالبًا	أحيانًا	أبدًا

- I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays. (قبل نعل الجملة الأساسي)
- I often sit on our balcony on hot nights.

أو تأتى بعد verb to be كما يلى:

- I'm always in bed at 11 pm.
- It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh.

How often?

كم عدد المرات؟

🔘 تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط.

- How often do you play football?
- I always play football.
- How often does he play football?
- He never plays football.

(Lesson 2)

#### Verbs and nouns.

have a shower	يستحم
get up late	يستبقظ متأخرا
eat shawerma	يأكل الشاورما
eat strawberries	يأكل فراولة

play video games	يلعب العاب فيديو
make dinner	يُعد طعام العشاء
speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية
do homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي

السلال للحريمة أسجاد

Write the words in the box in the correct place. Listen and check:

اكتب الكلمات في المربع في المكان الصحيح. استمع وتحقق،

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

#### never - often - sometimes - usually - always

100 %	80 %	70 %	50 %	0 %
always		~		never

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل:

1. speak English - I - always - English class - in my.

I always speak English in my English class.

2. meat - She - red - eats - never.

3. football - plays - He - with his friends - sometimes.

4. wake up - We - before 7 am - sometimes.

5. have -  $\underline{I}$  - usually - a sandwich for lunch.

6. Ola - work - never - is - after- tired.



# Activities



Choose the right answer to the

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- 1. I visit my grandparents three times a week. I - - visit them.
- (i) always never

- **c** sometimes
- 2. Hany never goes to school late. He - - goes to school early.
- often

(i) always

- c never
- play tennis. I can't play it. 3.1-----
- never

- **5** sometimes
- c always
- my grandparents on Saturdays-4. I always - -
- visit

10 make

- c play
- do you read books? 5. How
- olways

often

c never

- 6. I usually have a ---- for lunch.
- sandwich
- football

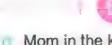
- **6** book
- to the club on Fridays. 7. Adel - - - - - - - -
- o is sometimes
- **b** goes sometimes
- c sometimes goes



اقرأ وصل:



- 🚺 Retaj always reads



- Mom in the kitchen.
- - balcony on hot nights.

We always help

How often does

- - a book at night.

- I often sit on our Nabil always speaks
- - Od. English in his English class.

e. Mariam go to the park?

- أعد ترتيب الكلمات: ﴿ ﴿ وَهُ وَهُ اللَّهُ مِنْ إِنَّا لَا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّ 1. tired - Amal - after - is - work - never. 2. Salma - How often - play - does - tennis? 3. wake up - We - before - sometimes - 7 am.
- 4. eat always on shawerma We Friday.



water ollo

نحاس copper

fruit

فاكهة

Lesson





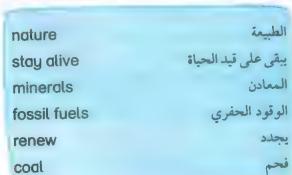
leather

جلد مدبوغ













تربة soil

القصدير tin الرصاص lead الزنك zinc الاقتصاد economy بترول oil gas

## Unit 6 Wood's the weather thu?

## Office Voids & Jelle 1429



keep healthy	بحافظ على صحته	cell phone	هاتف محمول
living things	الكائنات الحية	furniture	أثاث
transporting	النقل	cooker	بوتاجاز / موقد
goods	بضائع / سلع	product	منتج

## Study the following

The things nature gives us are called natural resources

- الأشياء التي تمنحها لنا الطبيعة تسمى موارد طبيعية.
- We can use these to stay alive and keep healthy.
  - نستخدمها لنبقى على قيد الحياة ونظل اصحاء.
- (3) We use gold and silver to make beautiful jewelry.
  - نستخدم الذهب والفضة لنصنع مصوغات جميلة.
- A Fossil fuels make the air polluted and we can't renew them.
  - الوقود الحضري يجمل الهواء ملوث ولا نستطيم تحديده.
- 6 All these natural resources are important for our economies.
  - كل هذه الموارد الطبيعية مهمة لاقتصادنا.

#### Listen and read. What are natural resources?

استمع واقرأ. ما هي الموارد الطبيعية؟

## Tapescript



استمع إلى النص: ﴿ نَصَ الاستَماعُ إِرَ

Our world is amazing. It gives us many things so we can have food, clothes, and build our houses. The things nature(1) gives us are called record (2). We

can use these to stay alive(3) and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals(4) like gold and copper(5).

Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things(6) need it to stay alive. We use it to drink, to give to our animals, and to grow plants. We also use it for cleaning, for clean energy, and for transporting<sup>(7)</sup> people and goods.

Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthy. We make furniture(8) from trees. We grow food in the soil. Fossil fuels(9) like oil, coal, and gas are also natural resources. They give us energy for our houses and fuel for our cars. But fossil fuels make the air polluted and we can't renew(10) them.

ا- الطبيعة

٢- الموارد الطبيعية

٣- يبقى على قيد الحياة

ع-معادن

٥- النجاس ٦- الكائنات الحية

٧- النقل

٨- الأثاث

9- الوقود الحفري

ا- بحدد

Lesson 3

Other natural resources are minerals, and these include gold, silver, tin(11), copper, lead(12), and zinc(13). We use gold and silver to make beautiful jewelry. We use the other minerals to make things like cell phones, pipes in our houses, cookers and fridges in our kitchens, computers, and cars.

اا-القصديا

١٢- الرصاص النازيك

عا-الاقتصاد

All these natural resources are important for our economies<sup>(14)</sup>. We take the natural resources and use them to make new products. We then sell the products to other

### countries and buy things too. Complete the summary of the text: أكمل ملخص النصء We use natural resources every day in our lives. The most important natural resource is o water as we need it to survive. Clean o is also very important. We use the a ...... from trees to make our furniture are also important for making things like fridges and cell phones. We use all these natural resources to make products to buy and sell to other Read again. Then look and write the natural resources in the اقرأ مرة أخرى. ثم انظر واكتب الموارد الطبيعية في المجموعة الصحيحة، correct group:



Natural resources from plants مصادر طبیعیة من النباتات	Natural resources from animals مصادر طبیعیة من الحیوانات	Mineral resources مصادر معدنیة
fruit	milk	соррег







1		
1 Choose th	e right answer from a, b or	ختر الاجابة الصحيحة:
1. We use the	from trees to make	furniture.
e leather	o copper	© wood
2. We need	to grow plants.	
o silver	<b>b</b> water	eggs
3	is a natural resource from anin	mals.
Collection	Cotton	<b>©</b> Fruit
4. Mineral res	ources include	
o wood	<b>b</b> silver	c nuts
5. We use silv	er and gold to make	Febr B
o soil	<b>b</b> wood	<b>e</b> jewelry
Read and	fill in the gaps:	غرأ واملأ الغراغات؛
	air - fuels - w	ater
		our lives. We need oto breathe. We get our energy from
fossil	000000	
Read and	reorder the following to make	e sentences:     :e sentences
1. amazing - C	our - world - is.	
2.to - We - gl	row - use - vegetables - soil.	
•	u - resources - What - use - do?	
	le - to make - use - resources -	



Wello a paragraph of Flow (5) who we con unling the following wards: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Water	
water - natural - resource - dri	ink - grow - animals
Punctuate the following:	ىع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Punctuate the following:	:סידט והלסדט הגרס:
	4
1- oil coal and gas are fossil fuels	
2- which natural resources are important for egy	lpt '





- هناك بعض الكلمات في اللغة الإنجليزية تحتوي على بعض الحروف غير المنطوقة (الصامتة) تسمى Silent letters ومن أمثلة هذه الكلمات:

- لا تنطق حرف (b) إذا جاء بعده حرف (m) \_\_\_\_

- لا تنطق حرف (g) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) \_\_\_\_

- لا تنطق حرف (W) إذا جاء بعده حرف (٢) \_\_\_\_

- لا تنطق حرف (k) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) \_\_\_\_

- لا تنطق حرف (أ) إذا جاء بعده حرف (ا)



المردات: استمع إلى المفردات: /b/ ثور bull شاطئ beach نحلة bee

Lesson

bear us

يصدر كلاً من الصوتين الله و ام من نفس المنطقة في مقدمة الفم عن طريق الضغط بالشفتين على بعضهما البعض. لكنهما مختلفين جدا حيث أن الصوت اp/ لا يحدث اهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية أثناء نطقه ويسمى (unvoiced) ويخرج هواء باندهاع من الفم عند نطقه ، أما الصوت /٥/ فإنه يُحدث اهتزازاً في الأحبال الصوتية (voiced) مع عدم خروج هواء من الفم أثناء النطق حيث يشبه حرف (ب) في اللغة العربية.

\* Pronunciation

وللتمييز بين النطقين يمكنك إحضار قطعة من الورق وتثبيتها أمام همك ومحاولة نطق الصوت /p/ تلاحظ اهتزاز الورقة بسبب الهواء الخارج من الفم أثناء نطق الصوت وعند محاولة نطق الصوت /o/ تلاحظ عدم اهتزاز الورقة نتيجة لعدم خروج هواء من الفم.





cas te aus

write يكتب

Lesson 4

Circle the words that start with 'b' in red. Circle the words that start with 'p' in green. Then look and match:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف "b" باللون الأحمر والكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف "p" باللون الأخضر. ثم انظر



Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen and repeat:



استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي سمعتها. ثم استمع وردد،

1- bee / pea 2- bull / pull 3- bear / pear 4- beach / peach 5- bee / pea 6- bull / pull 7- bear / pear 8- beach / peach



Look, read, and listen. What happens to the letters in bold in the





#### Units of measurement

وحدات القياس

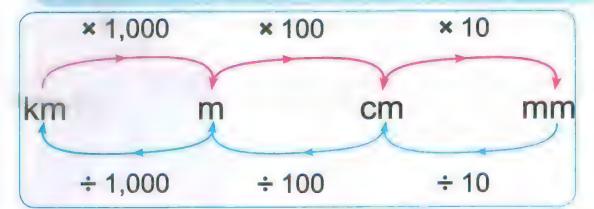
ـ هناك أكثر من وحدة لقياس الطول length وللقيام بذلك، نستخدم الكيلومترات (كم) ، والمتر (م)، والسنتيمتر (سم)، والملليمترات (مم).

المتر (م) المللمتر (مم) millimeter = mm meter = m centimeter = cm (سم) kilometer = km الكيلومتر (كم)

- لاحظ القياسات الأتية:

1m = 100cm = 1.000mm1cm = 10mm1 km = 1,000 m = 100,000 cm = 1,000,000 mm

- عند التحويل من كيلومتر إلى متر نقوم بغير ب العدد في 1000
- ١- عند التحويل من متر إلى سنتيمتر نقوم بضرب العدد في 100
- ١- عند التحويل من سنتيمتر إلى ملليمتر نقوم بضرب العدد في 10
- ١- عند التحويل من ملليمتر إلى سنتيمتر نقوم بقسمة العدد على 10
  - ٥- عند التحويل من ملليمتر إلى متر نقوم بقسمة العدد على 100
- ١- عند التحويل من متر إلى كيلومتر نقوم بقسمة العدد على 1000



#### How long / tall / high / far is it?

#### وللسؤال عن طول الأشياء نستخدم السؤال:

#### Think and write:

فكر واكتب ا

32,000m = ....km

0.3cm = ..... mm

2 40mm = ....cm

1,800m = .....km

12km = ..... m

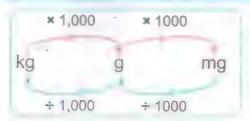
Lesson 4

مناك أكثر من وحدة لقياس الوزن ونستخدم الكيلوجرامات (كجم)، والجرامات (جم)، والليجرامات (مج).

$$1g = 1,000mg$$

$$1 \text{kg} = 1,000 \text{g} = 1,000,000 \text{mg}$$

- ١- عند التحويل من كيلوجرام إلى جرام نقوم بضرب العدد في 1000
- ٢- عند التحويل من جرام إلى مليجرام نقوم بضرب العدد في 1000
- ٣- عند التحويل من مليجرام إلى جرام نقوم بقسمة المدد على 1000
- ٤- عند التحويل من جرام إلى كيلوجرام نقوم بقسمة العدد على 1000



How much does it weigh?

وللسؤال عن الوزن نقول :

فكر واكتب ه

It weighs 7 kilograms.

ويكون الردء

#### Think and write:

6.5kg = \_\_\_\_g

17 kg = 7.000 g

Work with a partner. Play tic-tac-toe. Listen to your teacher for instructions إعمل مع زميلك العب لعبية. تك - تاك - تو . إستمع لتعليمات معلمك :

500 m = km	7.3 kg = g	0.8 cm =
2,200 g = kg	5 g = mg	6.7 km = m
30 mm = cm	900 g = kg	2,500 m = km

- لعبة tic - tac - toe مثل لعبة X - 0 حيث يكمل صف أو عمود أو قطر ليكون الفائز.

# Activities



Watch:

صل:

_	— A	- E	3
55 pull	•		
2 bear	•		
<b>S</b> peach	•	(C)	<b>(b</b> )
bee	•		
<b>9</b> bea	•	d C	(e)

2 Circle the odd one out:

ضع داثرة حول الكلمة المختلفة؛

1	peach	becr	(1) (A) (A)	pear
2	climb	write	P343 (*	pull
3	school	island	Easter	wrist
4	two	four	free	knee

Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة؛

- 1- We can get honey from the ......
- o bees

peas

e bears

- 2- A ..... is my favorite fruit.
- **beach**

15 peach

- c bull
- 3- In summer, I go to Alexandria to walk on the ....
- o bull

**beach** 

c peach

	Lesson 4
--	----------

	10000004	
<b>a</b> white	<b>5</b> green	e red
5- The boy fell onto the	e beach and hurt his	bb0005000dx0bx460
<b>o</b> wrist	() island	c castle
6- 1 kilogram equals	gram.	
<b>100</b>	<b>b</b> 1000	<b>©</b> 10
Read and fill in	the gaps:	اقرأ واملاً الفراغات؛

two - knee - climbing

The boy was 
on an island. Suddenly, he fell onto a beach and hurt his 
hurt his 
hurt his 
hours, people came and saved him.

# **5** Punctuate the following:

4- A peg is

ضع علامات الترقيم:

1- which city has most rain, nabil

2- mariam and retaj bought a 7 kg watermelon

- ثم بدأت تظلم.

# LESSONS

# Writing & Project



ع يعيد الستمع إلى المفردات

unsafe	غير آمن
power cut	انقطاع التيار

# کشاف

# کنمات اخری 📓 abror words



extreme weather	طقس قاسي
classmates	زملاء دراسة
get dark	يحل الظلام
frightening	مُخيف
black cloud	سحابة سوداء
wide	كبير
bits	قطع صغيرة

extreme heat	الحرارة الشديدة
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
lightning	برق
electric wires	الأسلاك الكهربائية
candle	شمعة
electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
closer	أقرب

### Conjugation of veras

# irregular verbs

رمنتظمة	أفعال غي
---------	----------

Regutar	Verbo	اهمالمنتظمة
Present	مضارع	Past ماض
destroy	ايدمر	destroyed
move	يتحرك	moved
twist	اليلف	twisted
contact	ا يوصل	contacted
damage	ال يدمر / يتلف	damaged

Present	والمضارع	Past ماض
stand	][ يقف	stood
find out	يكتشف	found out
strike	يصعق	struck
hurt	يؤذي	hurt
see	ایری	SOW

# Study the following

1 was at school with my classmates.

2 Then it started to get dark.

3 We could see it was moving slowly.

We could see it was damaging buildings.

6 There might be very strong winds.

(6) There might be heavy rain and lightning.

- قد تكون هناك رياح قوية جدًا.

- استطعنا أن نراها نتحرك ببطء،

- كنت في المدينة مع زملائي في الفصل.

~ استطعنا أن نراها وهي تحطم المنازل.

It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall.
- قد لا يكون الخروج آمن - يمكن أن تسقط الأسلاك الكهربائية.

- قد يكون هناك انقطاع للتيار الكهريائي،

People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

- قد يحتاج الأشخاص في الشارع أو المنازل أو السيارات إلى مساعدتكم.

# Read. What extreme weather in England is the writer describing. Check ( ) the correct photo below?

اقرأ. ما هو الطقس القاسي في إنجلترا الذي يصفه الكاتب؟ ضع علامة ( 🗸 ) على الصورة الصحيحة.









# What's the wonther Law?

Read another account of an extreme weather event. The words in bold are wrong. Can you correct them?

اقرأ بياناً آخرا لحدث طقس قاسي. الكلمات الكتوبة بخط ثقيل خطأ. هل بمكن أن تصححها؟

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I loked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there were a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to sea. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There was other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see some more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the son again and drove on through the desert!

### Read the tips for keeping safe in extreme weather. Match them to the correct group. One tip matches both groups

إقرأ الأرشادات للحفاظ على الأمان في الجو القاسي. صل الأرشادات بالمجموعة الصحيحية. يمكن أن تصل نمبيحة واحدة بالجموعتين.

- Meeping safe in extreme heat:
- b Keeping safe in a sandstorm:
- 1 Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty.
- اشرب الكثير من الماء حتى لولم تشعر بالعطش.
- 5- Open the windows when there's a cool wind.
- افتح النوافذ عندما تكون الرياح باردة.

- 2- Wear a scarf to protect your face.
  - ارتدي وشاح لحماية
- Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade. لا تخرج. إذا توجب عليك الذهاب بالخارج،
- 3- Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning. حاول قضاء الوقت المباني الباردة التي تكبيف الهواء.
- 7- Eat small, light meals. تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.
- 4- Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth. ابق في الداخل حتى لا يدخل الرمل في فمك.
- 8- If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car. إذا كنت تقدود السيارة،



9- If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can aet in. إذا كنت في المنزل، فتأكد من إغلاق النوافذ حتى لا 10- Wear light, cool clothing. ارتد ملابس خفيفة

11- Cover your head and face as much as possible. غطى رأسك ووجهك قدر الإمكان. 12- Turn off girconditioning to stop the sand coming in. تم بإيقاف تشغيل

### Read and do:

اقرأ وافعل ا

### What might happen in a storm?

Allow to have a safe to a secret

تدخل الرمال.

- There might be very strong winds.
- · There might be heavy rain and lightning.
- It might not be safe to go outside electric wires could fall.
- · There might be a power cut.
- · People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.





### How can you protect yourself?

- Stay inside and keep dry.
- Make sure you have candles and torches - there might be a power cut.
- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.
- Don't go anywhere by train this could be unsafe.
- Help anyone who is afraid.
- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.
- Don't stand near wires they could fall and give you an electric shock.

# Unit 6 Whal's the weather like?

Ohome the tig	ht answet from a, h or to	ختر الإجابة الصحيحة؛
1. To keep save in a	sandstorm, you should wear a	scarf to protect your
egleg	face	cofoot
2. You should conta	ct your friends and family to che	ck that are
alazy	afraid	<b>c</b> safe
3 any	one who is afraid.	
Help	<b>D</b> Let	<b>c</b> Leave
4. We can use	when there is a power	cut.
o trains	torches	c trees
5. Turn	the air-conditioning to stop the	sand coming in.
on	of of	<b>c</b> off
6. I enjoy	new friends.	
o reading	(a) making	<b>c</b> working
7. A vet helps	animals to get better.	
co good	(a wild	sick

# 2 Teal and Tales)

أقرا وصل:

# 1 I work in a team when

- I work in a team wher
- 2 I help my mom
- Make sure your window
- Don't stand near wires.
- 5 When there is a storm

# holoso).

- people on the street might need your help.
- b. They could fall and give you an electric shock.
- o c. are shut so no sand can get in.
- d in the kitchen.
  - I'm playing football.





املاً الفراغات؛

### cut - wind - extreme

We should take care in extreme weather. A storm is one	of the 🕡
weather. There might be very strong	There might be a
power Stay at home to be safe in extrem	ne weather.
er the following to make sentence:	عد ترتيب الكلمات؛ ﴿ 5:
1. dry - Stay - and - inside - keep.	
2. might - strong - There - be - very - winds.	
3. clothing - Wear - cool - light.	
4. is - anyone - Help - who - afraid.	
6 Tanciano che followingo	ضع علامات الترقيم:
1- how can you protect yourself, salma	
2- amal and adel help anyone who is afraid	







# Review

### The weather



cloud سحابة



cloudy ملبد



بالغيوم



rain مطر



rainy ممطر



wind رياح



windy عاصف (شديد الرياح)



sunny مشمس



snow جليد



ice ثلج



rainbow قوس قزح

### Jack and the Beanstalk



tornado إعصال



tidal wave موجةالمد والجزر



strong winds رياح قوية



sandstorm عاصفة رملية



heat wave موجة حارة



flood فيضان

### Natural resources



fruit فاكهة



leather جلد مدبوغ



silver فضة



milk لبن



copper نحاس



wood

خشب

twist

Regular verbs

cotton قطن



میاه



تربة soil وعلم فهب فالاو

القصدير

nature	الطبيعة
minerals	المعادن
ossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
renew	يجدد
coal	فحم
unsafe	غير أمن

الطبيعا	tin
المعاد	lead
الوقود	zinc
يجدد	economy
فحم	torch
غير آم	

lead	الرصاص
zinc	الزنك
economy	الاقتصاد
torch	كشاف
Irregular verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة

Preser	مضارع lt	Past ماض	Pres
believe	یعتقد/یصدق	believed	bring
call	ینادی	called	fall dow
rain	تمطر	rained	getup
stay	يىقى	stayed	hear
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	feel

twisted

أفعال منتظمة













وظائف لغوية

ا نستخدم:



المكان + حالة الطقس + It's going to be

للتنبؤ عن حالة الطقس

- It's going to be hot in Egypt.

Grammar

قواعدلغوية

### The present simple ين الأصلي المسلي المسلولة ...

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع → (inf.) He - She - It - اسم مفرد → (inf.) s / es / ies

### ظروف التكرار Adverbs of frequency

 أَسْتُخُدُم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادة بعد (verb) to be) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي :

100%	80%	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
دائمًا	عادة	غالبًا	أحيانا	أبدًا

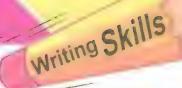
- I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

How often?

كم عدد المرات؟

. تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط.

- How often do you play football?
- I always play football.



# مهارات الختانة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

### Answers to Paragraphs

### The desert

climate - hot - desert - cold - night - day

The desert has a very special climate. It has very hot days and very cold nights. Some people who live in the desert. They try to keep cool in the day and warm at night. The desert is very interesting place.



### Leason 3

Water

water - natural - resource - drink - grow - animals

Water is the most important natural resource. All living things need it to stay alive. We use water to drink. We also use it to grow plants and keep animals. I drink three bottles of water every day.



### Activity Unit 6

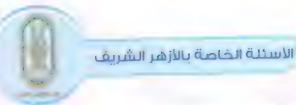
Hot summer

### summer - weather - sunny - hot - Alexandria

3 We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers. In summer we go to Alexandria. It is cool in summer in Alexandria. It's a fantastic city



### AZHAR EXERCISES



استمع وأختر؛
(-ald minu hot)

	A- Listenii	ng with a light and light
1 Listen and choose	9	استمع وأذتر؛
1. Egypt is		(cold - rainy - hot)
2. We cook in the		(bathroom - kitchen - bedroom)
		the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:
	classmates scho	
A : Where did you go u	jesterady?	
B : I was at		you do there?
B: I met my		
	B- Readin	
Read the following	text and answer the	أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:
1. I wasthrough diving 2. I visited my	ugh the desert.  b driving  family	cult. I closed all the windows.  c swimming  c cousins
doors doors	boxes	© windows
	C- The Rec	ıder
Read and write	(True) or (False	اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ: :(ع True False
Mr Bassam is a	geologist.	
Mariam finds a	olue gecko on a rock.	
5 Choose the righ	nt answer from	a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:
1.I always	to the club on Satur	rday.  © going

gir is important to keep us healthy.

Dirty

Clean



## Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة؛

We can use natural resources to stay alive and keep healthy. Natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels, and minerals. Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things need it to stay alive. Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthu.

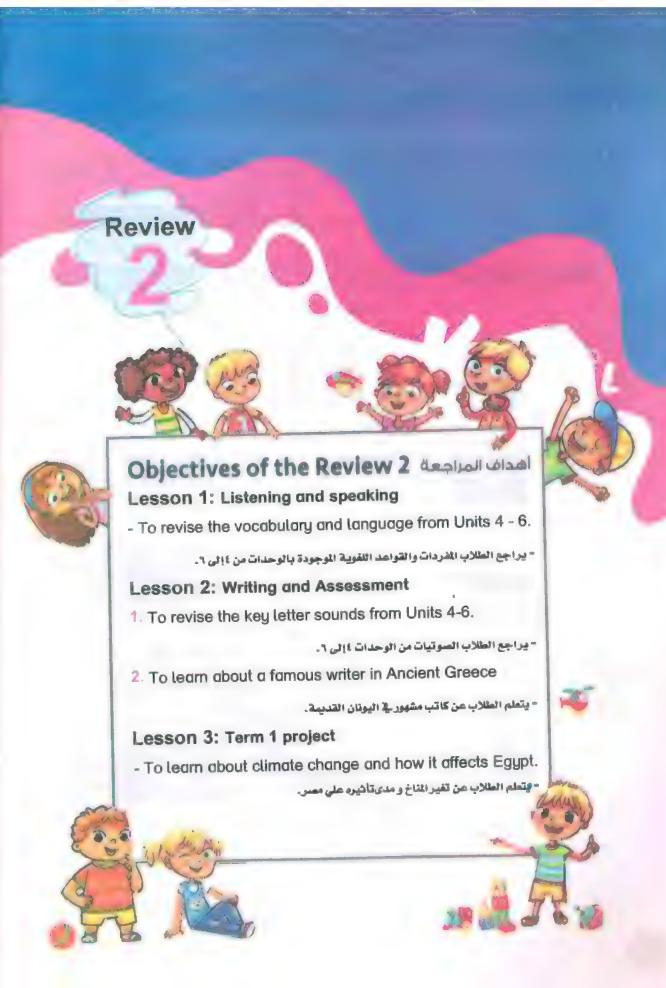
### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. Living things need	water to stay	
o bad	<b>b</b> sorry	<b>G</b> alive
2. Water is the most	important natural	
animal animal	10 resource	crops

Bad

اقرأ وصل:

Unit 6 Whate He Water him this	
B- Answer the following questions:	
3. Why is the clean air important?	no tana mana and and also, all all all all each one and and and and and
4. What are natural resources?	
A Read and fill in the gaps:	اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:
copper - fossil - Minerals	
We use natural resources every day in our lives. We g	et our energy from
	, are very
important. We can make things like cell phones and cars	
The ad and reorder the following to make sentence	أعد ترتيب الكلمات:
1. have - of - a nice - We - variety - weather.	ur was too too too too too too too too too to
2. was - It - a very - day - hot.	
3. lots - Drink - water - of.	a gas and gas right from him was this rate, the first wint with the total
4. can - How - yourself - protect - you?	
Write a passagraph of F(vo (8) contents a string	the falling may worke
	اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خ
مس جمل عن:	اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خ
	اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خ
مس جمل عن:	اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خ
مس جمل عن:	اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خ
summer - weather - sunny - hot - Alexandr	اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خ
summer - weather - sunny - hot - Alexandr	اکتب فقرة إنشائية من خ
summer - weather - sunny - hot - Alexandr	اکتب فقرة إنشائية من خ



# Lesson

# Units 4,5 & 6

Listen and point:

استمع وأشره



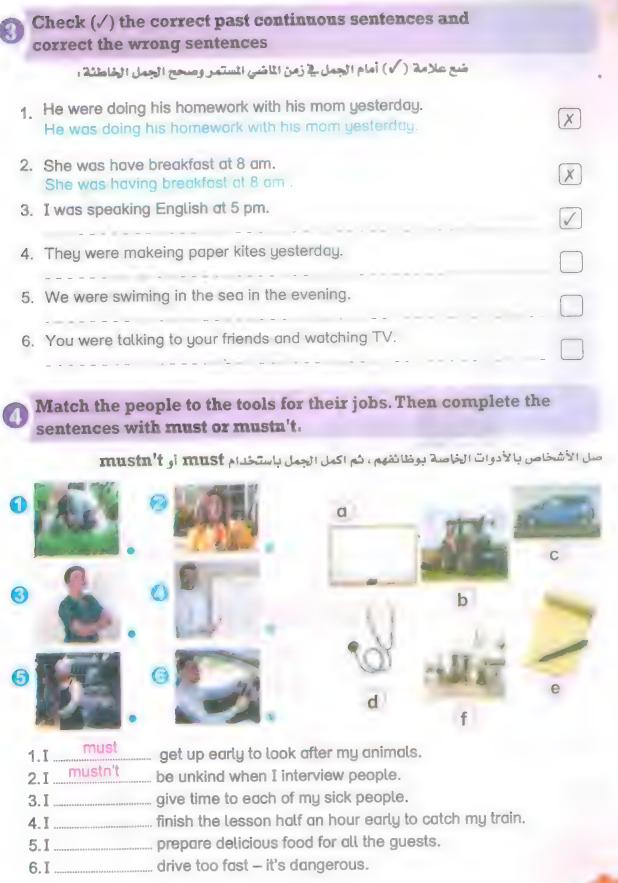


look and write:

انظر واكتب،

51101





Review 2

# Units 4,5 & 6



## Vocabulary

a famous writer	كاتب مشهور
Ancient Greece	اليونان القديمة
moral	درس أخلاقي
(be) called	تسمي
fables	أساطير خرافية
patient	صبور

path	طريق
traveler	مسافر
shine	تسطع الشمس
pull tighter	يضيق الملابس
blow	ينفخ
take off	يخلع

# Study the following

🚹 Aesop was a very famous writer in Augient Greece.

- كان أيسوب كاتبًا مشهورًا في اليونان القديمة.

2 He wrote stories called "fables"- they always had a moral

- كتب قصص أساطير خرافية تتعلق دائمًا بالأخلاق.

A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people.

- الدرس الأخلاقي يعلمنا العطف ومساعدة الأخرين.

The North wind was trying to make the Sun angry.

- حاولت الرياح الشمالية أن تغضب الشمس.

6 He pulled his coat tighter around him.

- لقد ارتدى معطفه بإحكام حول نفسه.

6 The North wind was angry and blew away.

- كانت الرياح الشمالية غاضبة وهبت بعيدًا.

### Review 2

Think about eco-tourism again. Remember that eco-tourism is about being kind to the environment and local people. Color the things which eco-tourism is in yellow and the things which it isn't in red

فكر ١٤ السياحة البيئية مرة أخرى. تذكر السياحة البيئية هي أن تكون عطوفًا على البيئة والسكان. ثون الأشياء التي تخص البيئة باللون الأصفر والأشياء التي لا تخص البيئة باللون الأحمر.



استمع إلى النص

Assorbans e veru famo is writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories at earlies in a they always had a moral. A moral teaches as the tarm on the plat to other people. An example of a maral . Perkind and, attent with people.



Read and listen to one of Aesop's fables. Choose the moral a, b, or c:

اقرأ واستمع إلى واحدة من أساطير إيسوب ثم اختر:

Listen to the person who is against you and don't do things.

1 Always wear a coat, even when it's sunny.

C Sametimes you can get people to do things by being clever, not by being strong.

The Nettin What was invergite make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than an "He lorned down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. I'm not so sure it are stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

At that moment a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind. Or. 18 1 200 Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind soid the same increase to win. He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The nan felt the World and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He dianglet the Wing blow of his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped

Then the 5th came out and began to shine. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!." He got so hat the lear offine coat "That's better," he said.

The Sun toward at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew awar!



# Review 2

	Read again ar	nd put the ev	ents in the sto	ory in the cor	rect order.
		بحيح:	القصة بالترتيب الم	خرى ورتب احداث	اقرأ النص السابق مرة أ
1	· The North Wine	d is not nice to	the Sun.		1
2	The Sun wins t	he competition	١.		
3	The Sun tries to	o make the mo	in take his coat	off.	
4	The Sun sugge	ests a competit	ion.		
5.	The North Wind	d tries to make	the man take h	is coat off.	
6	The Sun sees	a man on the p	oath.		
n	Listen and wr	ite the words	you hear. Th	en match:	
				م صبل:	استمع واكتب الكلمات ث
	-				#ا الله الله عن الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل
	Tap	escript	والاستماع ال	ريص المن	DI OJ EGILI E
	1- strawberry	2- throw	3- street	4- three	5- strong
	6- screen	7- eye	8- town	9- boy	10- loud
	1	1- s			
		2- t			
	and the same of th	2- (			
		3- s	•••••	<b>(</b> )	
		A +			
		••••••••••			
	Mark Company	5- s	**************		
		6- 6			P. Carrier
0		0" 3			
'n l		7- е		<b>h</b>	
		8- t			
1		O* L			
	100	9- b		•••••	
		•			. 3



# \* TERM 1 - PROJECT 1



## Vocabulary

climate change	تغير المناخ	evaporate	يتبخر
affect	يوثر على	rise	ترتفع
glacier melting	انصهار الجليد	sea levels	مستويات البحر
drought	جفاف	less crops	محاصيل أقل
flood	فيضان	melt	ينصهر
agriculture	الزراعة	salty	مالح
save	يوفر	00119	
solution	حل	soil-less farming	الزارعة بدون تربة
temperature	درجة الحرارة	specific greenhouse	صوية زجاجية خاصة



# Study the following

Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution.

- التغير المناخي هو تغير الطقس بعوامل التلوث.

2 The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting.

- ترتفع درجة الحرارة وينصهر الجليد.

When the sea gets higher, we get floods.

- عندما يرتفع البحر يحدث الفيضان.

When the temperature rises, we get drought because the water evaporaces

- عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة يحدث الجفاف لأن الماء يتبخر.

6 Climate change might cause problems to agriculture.

-تغير المناخ يسبب مشاكل في الزراعة.

6 Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses

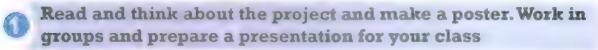
- تأخذ المحاصيل كمية مناسبة من الماء في صوبات زجاجية خاصة.







Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises, we get droughts because the water evaporates.



اقرأ وفكر في الشروع واعمل بوستر - اعمل في مجموعات وجهز عرض لفصلك.

Think about how climate change is affecting Egypt. هکر کیف تغیرانانځ یودر علی مصر.

Choose one of the topics in the box below in your group.

اختر واحدة من المصطلحات الأتية في مجموعتك،

Rising temperature - Rising sea levels - Floods - Droughts - Less crops

Think about what caused climate change in Egypt.

فكرف اسباب تغير المناخف مصر

### Anke flow sentences like this one:

Industry making things → warmer temperature → too hot for crops → crops die.

Warmer temperature → glaciers melt → sea level rises → sea water gets into the River Nile and makes it salty → this kills the crops

Review 2

Think about some key words you want to use for your presentation.

Circle some good words in the table below:

فكر في استخدام الكلمات الأتية لتستخدمها في تقديم عرضك، وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الجيدة في هذا الجدول.

environment	methane	table	carbon dioxide	temperature
whiteboard	greenhouse gas	cats	agriculture	drought

Think about some possible solutions. Look at the example.

فكرفي حلول ممكنة . انظر إلى هذا المثال:

Climate change might cause problems to agriculture. There might not be enough water to grow crops. One solution to drought is to use soil-less farming. See the photo below. In this way, you grow plants without using soil.

Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses. And so you save water and time.

COP27 is a very important international environmental meeting. People from many countries talk about how to help the environment and stop climate change. This year it will be in Sharm El-Sheikh. Think about what you and your group want to say to COP27 about Egypt and the world

COP27 اجتماع هام جدًا للبيئة العالمية. يتحدث الكثير من الناس في الدول الأخرى عن كيفية مساعدة البيئة وتوقف تغير المناخ. فكر أنت ومجموعتك فيما تقوله إلى COP27 عن مصر والعالم.

### Dear COP27

We are worried about climate change. Here in Egypt we have these problems with climate change:

My friends and I think we can help Egypt by doing this:

We think we can help the world environment by doing this:

# on Units (4,5 & 6)

# Activity



Choose the right	t answer from a, b or c	اختر الإجابة الصحيحة؛
1.A: How	do you play karate?	B: I never play it.
old old	(b) often	<b>c</b> long
2. Amir	friends with other people in	his community.
grew	<b>blew</b>	c made
3. Tourists like	near coral reef in the	e Red Sea.
diving	10 traveling	driving
4. Seham	tidy up the kitchen.	
mustn't	ii must	shouldn't
5. My mom	the meat with a sharp kr	nife yesterday.
cut cut	(5) ate	g bought
Read and match	•	اقرأ وصل:
Oxygen is	a. a foo	tball match by yourself.
You can't win	<ul><li>b important</li></ul>	rtant for Ancient Egypt's economy.
My friend Hisham	c. the a	ir polluted.
Fossil fuels make	o gas	s that trees release into the air.

Read and fill in the gaps:

Review 2

اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:

reeds _	freshwater	-	sp	eci	es
---------	------------	---	----	-----	----

The banks of the Nile River have many different of animals and
plants like hippos and bamboo. There is lots of, not saltwater. Man
water birds live in the on the river banks.

# Read the following passage and answer the questioner

اقرأ النص الأتي وأجب عن الأسئلة؛

Nabil's father is a geologist. Last week he drove to the desert with his friend Emad to find out new rocks. After ten minutes, they looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed the windows of the car but it was very dark. There were other cars on the road. They were going to hit them. Suddenly the sandstorm moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A- Choose	the correct	answer from	a.b. or c
-----------	-------------	-------------	-----------

mad closed the	of the car.	
<b>b</b> doors	Cchairs	
to the desert by	******** d	
Бсаг	<b>c</b> bike	
g questions:		
nrough the window?		
		w ·
er go to the desert?		
	b doors to the desert by	to the desert by

Farmers were very

e never gets up early.



# 6 Read and reorder the following:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

- 1. exciting is Eco-tourism idea an.
- 2. driving through They desert were the.
- 3. in Egypt People worked Ancient hard.
- 4. teaches A moral to us be kind.

## Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

glass - plants - warm - temperature - 15 - 25 - 25 -



# Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

- 1. what s the matter
- 2. i must do my english homework



# Amir And His Lizara

# امير والسمارة الخامة به



### **Objectives of the Reader**

### أهداف القصة

1. To read and understand a story.

١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.

- 2. To enjoy reading in English.
- ٢ يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الانجليزية.
- 3. To identify characters in a story.

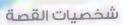
- ٣ يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات القصة.
- 4. To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story.
  - 4 يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والفردات في قصة.
- 5. To review the story and check understanding.
- وراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمه لها.
- 6. To put events from a story in order.
- ٦ يرتب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
- 7. To examine the characters in a story.
- ٧ يختبر الطالب في شخصيات القصة.

8. To retell the story.

١٠ - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.

# Vocabulary

Characters of the Reader







Amir



Mariam مریم (اخت <mark>امیر</mark>)



Amir's mother والدة أمير (الأم)



Amir's father



Lizzy the lizard (لسحلية (لدي)



Youssef یوسف (زمیل امیر)



**Hany** هانی (خبیر زواحف)



Mr Bassam السيد بسام (مدرس أمير)





**gecko** ىرص

dangerous

JEN

rock

(1) 123

rabbit

ارنب



hamster الهامستر (حيوان قارض)



lizard



tortoise



reptiles زواحف



poster



snake ثعبان



Amir And His Lizard

### The Reader

# The Reader



Amir, Mariam, Mom, and Dad are having lunch together. Mom cooked Amir's favorite dish, molokhia and chicken. But Amir isn't happy.

بتناول أمير ومريم والام والاب الغداء مغا. طبخت الام الطبق المفضل لأمير وملوخية ودجاج. لكن أمير ليس سعندا،،

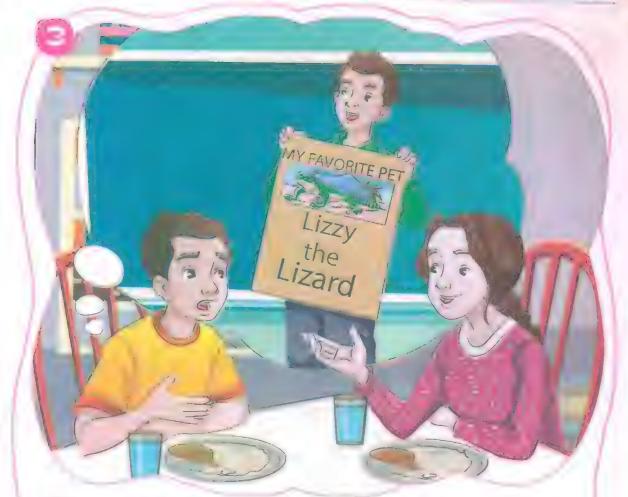
"What's the matter, Amir? Don't you like your lunch?" asked Mom. "The food is delicious", thanks, Mom," replied Amir. He sounded sad.

> سألت الأم أمير "ما الأمريا أمير؟ ألا تحب غدائك؟ " رد أمير "الطعام لذيذ ، شكراً با أمي"، و لكنه بدا حزينًا،



"What's the matter", Amir?" asked Dad. "Don't you feel well?" "I'm fine, Dad. But I didn't have a very happy day at school," replied Amir. "Oh, no! You usually love school. What happened?"

> سأل الآب أمير "ما الأمريا أمير؟"، "ألا تشعر بأنك بخبر؟" فرد امير "أنا بخيريا أبي. لكني لم أحظى بيومًا سعيدًا حدًا في المدرسة ". عاد أبي فرد الاب "اوه لا! أنت عادة تحب المدرسة. ما الذي حدث؟"



"We showed our favorite pet posters today," explained Amir.

"But your poster was amazing!" said Mariam. "Why are you sad?"

"Well, everyone else's poster showed cats, rabbits, hamsters' or fish you know, pets everyone has. And my poster was about Lizzy, my lizard."

> أوضح أمير: "عرضنا ملصقاتنا المفضلة الخاصة بالحيوانات الأليفة اليوم". قالت مريم. "لكن الملصق الخاص بك كان مذهلاً!" "فنماذا انت حزين؟"

قرة امير أحسان اطهرات ملصنات الاخرائي القطط أو الأرانية أو الهاميسير إحيوان قارض) أو الاستمال - كما ليلم بن هذه في الصوابات النفة التي لذي الجميع . أما ملصفي فكان عن ليري، السجلاة الخاصة ب

1-hamsters

حيوان الامستر (من القوارض)





"When I showed" my poster, everyone laughed. They said, "What a strange pet!"

And Youssef said, "Lizzy is ugly[2]!" said Amir, almost(3) in tears(4).

عندما عرضت ملصفي ، ضحك الحميق. قالوا : "يا لها من حيوان أليف غريب!" حتى أن يوسف قال: "أن ليري فبيحة!" قال أمير ذلك و هو يكاد يبكي.

"Listen," said Dad kindly. "People sometimes say things like that when they don't know (1) information. The best you can do is to explain why Lizzy is such a good pet! Learn more about reptiles, and explain why they're amazing (6), not ugly!

قال أبي بلطف: "انصت إلي"، " أحيانًا ما يقول الناس أشياء هكذا عندما لا يكون لديهم المعلومات الكافية. أفصل ما يمكنك فعله هو أن تشرح لماد تعتبر ليزى حيوانا أليفا رائغًا! عليك أن تتعلم المزيد حول الزواحف، وتشرح لماذا هي حيوانات رائعة و ليست فبيحة!"

"That's a good idea, Dad. I'll do that." Amir felt happier and started to enjoyhis molokhia.

هذه فكرة جيدة يا أبي، سأفعل ذلك. \* حينئد شعر أمبر بالسعادة وبدأ يستمتع بطبق

1-15/11/21/21	عرض / أظهر	قبيح	Ser live and	یکاد / تقریبا
4- tears	دموع	كافى		رانع



Later that evening, Amir looked online<sup>(1)</sup>. He found a reptile club<sup>(2)</sup> nearby. He sent an area to ask if he could visit. He was very excited when he got an email saying, "Yes, you're very welcome to visit us!"

في وقت إَخِرِ مِن ذَلَكَ المَسَاء ، بحث أمير عنى الانتريث. فوجد نَادي لَنْزُواحَفَ في مَكَانَ قريب، فقام بارسال بريدا إليكترونيا للسؤال عما إذا كان يمكنه ريارة المكان، لقد كان متحمسا للغاية عندما تلقى رد في بريد البكتروني: نقول "نعم ،يمكنك ريارننا في أي وقت!"







A few days later, Dad drove Amir and Mariam to the reptile club. There, they met Hany, a reptile expert(1). He welcomed them and explained that he is a type of scientist called a herpetologist(2).

بعد أيام قليلة ، قام الاب بالقيادة إلى نادى الزواحف مصطحبا معه أمير ومريم. وهناك قابلوا هاني وهو خبير بالزواحف، قام بالترحيب بهم وأوضح أنه عالم في الزواحف يطلق عليه لقب أخصائي الزواحف.

"Like you, Amir, I was interested in reptiles, and now it's my job!"

واضاف هاني " كنت مثلك يا أمير ، مهتمًا بالزواحف ، والأن تنك هي وظيفتيا" ﴿ ١٩٥١٥٢٥ ﴿ ١٩٥١٥٢٥ ﴿

Amir smiled. "Oh, I didn't know that someone who works with reptiles is called a herpetologist. What a cool(3) job!" he said.

ابتسم أمير قائلًا "اوه ، لم أكن أعرف أن الشخص الذي يعمل مع الزواحف يسمى أخصائي الزواحف. يا لها من وظيفه رائعة! "



Hany showed Amir and Mariam lots of different reptiles - snakes, lizards, geckos(1), and tortoises.

"It's important to look after them well, isn't it?" asked Mariam. "I like the tortoises. Do they live a long time?"

قام هاني بعرض الكثير من الزواحف المختلفة لأمير ومريم ثعابين وسحالي وأبراص وسلاحف. "من المهم الاعتباء بهم جيدًا ، أليس كذلك؟" و أضافت، "أنا أحب السلاحف. فهل بعيشون فترة طويلة من العمر؟"

"Yes," replied Hany. "And be careful. You should read and learn about them. All reptiles are an important part of the food chain, too. Tortoises(2) can live to be 100 years old! Can you come with me on a field trip tomorrow?"

أجابها هاني: "نعم"، ولكن عليك أن تكوني حريصة. يجب أن تقرأي وتتعلمي المزيد عنها. فكل الزواحف تعتبر جزءاً مهما من السلسلة الغذائية. يمكن للسحلاف أن تعيش حتى تبلغ ا عام! و سأل هائي "هل يمكنك كما أن تأتيا معي في رحلة ميدانية غذا؟ "

Amir and Mariam looked at Dad. "Of course!" Dad was excited too! نظر أمير ومريم إلى أبيهما. وكان الأب متحمسا وقال "بالطبع!"

1- expert

2- herpetologist خبير'

3- cool أخصاني الزواحف

1- geckos

2-tortoises



### The Reader





Early the next morning, Dad, Mariam, and Amir met Hany at the club.

"It's important to have the right tools"," Hany explained.

و في صباح اليوم النالي في وفت مبكر ، تقابل الاب ومريم وأمير مع هاني في النادي. فأوضح هاني قائلًا، "من المهم أن يكون لديك الأدوات المناسبة".

"I love reptiles, but I know some can be proposed." But you're safe with me!

Ready? Let's go!"

1-tools

"أنا أحب الرواحف ، لكنني أعلم أن بعضها يمكن أن يكون خطيرًا، لكنك بأمان معي! هل انتم مستعدون؟ هيا بنا !"

Soon, Hany, Dad, Mariam, and Amir left for a very special desert, which was not far from Cairo.

و بسرعة توجه كل من هاني والات ومربم وأمير إلى صحراء شديدة الخصوصية والتى لم تكن بعيدة عن الفاهرة.





When they arrived, they spent some time looking around. Hany showed them the best places to look. Suddenly(1), Amir found a gecko on a rock(2)!

عندما وصلوا ، أمضوا بعض الوقت في تفقد المكان حولهم. فأوضح لهم هاني فبين لهم أفضل الأماكن المخصصةُ للبحث. و فحأة وجد أمير برض على أحد الصخور!

"Look!' he said. "What an amazing blue color! I thought all geckos were brown!"

"No, they can be different colors. Some of them can even change color!" said Hany.

فقال امير: "انظر!" "يا له من لون ازرق مدهل! كنت اعتقد أن كل الأبراض ذات لونا بنيا!" رد عليه هاني قائلا: "لا ، الابراض بمكن أن تكون بالوان مختلفة، يسهل لبعضهم أن يغير لونه!"

Amir was very happy.

هنا كان أمير سعبدا حدا.



Two weeks later, Amir was at school. Mr Bassam had something important to say: "A special guest" is here to give a talk!" Amir loved talks(2). They were always interesting. "Who is it?" he wondered(3).

عد استوعين كان أمير في المدرسة. كان لدى السيد بسام شيثًا مهما ليفوله: " لدينا النوم ضيفا مميزًا هنا الإلقاء حديث!" و كان أمير يحب تلك المحادثات، حيث كانت دائما شيق. وتساءل السيد بسام متعجبا "من يكون هذا الضيف؟".



It was a big surprise<sup>(4)</sup> when Hany walked in! He talked to the boys about his job and protecting the environment<sup>(5)</sup>. He brought some reptiles for the boys to hold.

كانت مفاجأة كبيرة عندما دخل هاني إلي المكان! فتحدث إلى الأولاد عن وظيفته وعن حماية البيئة. وأحضر معه بعض الزواحف للاولاد كي يحملوها بأنفسهم.

Of course, he chose Amir to be his helper! All the boys, even Youssef, thought it was really cool.

و بالطبع قام هانى بأختيار أمير كى يكون مساعدا له! كل الأولاد وحتى يوسف أعجبوا بهذا الأمر كثيرا.

1- guest	ضيف	2-talks	احاديث / خطبة	3- wondered بعجب العامل عجب	
4- surprise	مفاجأة	5- environment	البيئة		



After the lesson<sup>(1)</sup>, Youssef spoke to Amir. "I'm sorry, Amir," he said. "Lizzy isn't ugly. I really enjoyed Hany's talk. And now I think reptiles are amazing!"

بعد انتهاء الدرس تحدث يوسف إلى أمير قائلا: "أنا آسف يا أمير". " السلحية ليزي ليست قبيحة. " لقد استمتعت حفًا بالحديث الذي اجراه هاني. والآن أعتقد أن الزواحف مذهلة! "

"That's OK," said Amir. "Oh, I know: why don't you come to my house? You can see Lizzy. You can at it, too!"

قال أمير: "لا عليك". "أوه. أعلم لما لا تأتي إلى منزلي؟ تستطيع ان ترى ليزي. و تقوم باطعامها أنضا! "

"Awesome! Yes, please!" replied Youssef. "Thank you, Amir!" أجاب يوسف: "هذا أمر راثع! نعم من فضلك!". "شكرا لك يا أمير!"

The two boys were friends again<sup>(3)</sup>.

و هكذا اصبح الولدان صديقين مرة أخرى.

1-lesson	2-1005	3- again	مرة أخرى

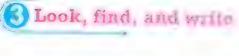


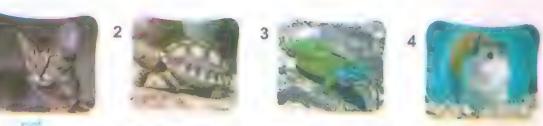


# Amir And His Lizard

اقرأ وأوجد واكتب









,												
C	a	r	е	l	i	b	S	n	· a	k	е	
е	g	е	С	k	0	t	٧	h	0	n	t	
l	i	z	f	С	a	t	i	a	n	d	m	
g	е	ι	i	t	0	m	a	m	е	i	0	ĺ
r	0	i	m	V	i	е	z	s	u	x	f	
a	S	Z	r	a	b	i	a	t	0	k	i	
b	n	a	b	0	t	a	n	е	k	е	S	
b	a	r	w	a	С	a	n	r	С	w	h	
i	k	d	f	i	S	s	h	m	0	j	y	
t	i	е	d	t	0	r	t	0	i	S	е	





انظر واكتب (كالمثال)؛

Amir - Dad - Hany - Mariam - Mom - Mr Bassam - Youssef - Lizzy

















# Read and write T (true) or F (false):

انظر واكتب صح أم خطأ:

1. Amir doesn't like Mom's molokhia.	( F )
2. Amir's poster is about his pet tizard.	( )
3. Amir sends a letter to the reptile club.	( )
4. Hany is a geologist.	( )
5. Hany says that all reptiles are dangerous.	( )
6. Mariam finds a blue gecko on a rock.	( )
7. Hany gives a talk at Amir's school.	( )
8. Amir invites Youssef to feed Lizzy.	( )

### The Reader

# Read and write. Use words from the story:

A	-	-	-	-
A	CI	IU.	3	3

2. Youssef called Lizzy

4. A gecko is a type of

6. Hany, Amir, Mariam, and Dad went on a field

8. You must be careful because some reptiles are

اقرأ واكتب. استخدام كلمات من القصة: ،

### Down

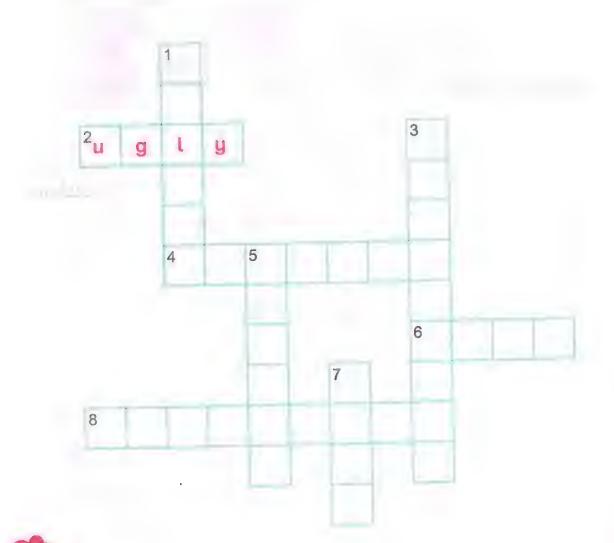
1. Hany asked Amir to be his in the classroom.

3. A herpetologist is a type of

5. At school, Amir made a about Lizzy.

7. Amir found the gecko on a

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*



## Amir And His Lizard

فع الصور في الترتيب الصحيح: : Put the pictures in the correct order:





## 6 Read and match

اقرأ وأكمل:

- 1. Mr Bassam is
- 2. Hany is
- 3. Youssef called
- 4. Amir found
- 5. Hany invited
- 6. Hany chose

- a. Amir's lizard ugly.
- b. Amir and Mariam on a field trip.
- c. Amir to be his helper.
- d. Amir's teacher.
- e. a reptile club online.
- f. a herpetologist.

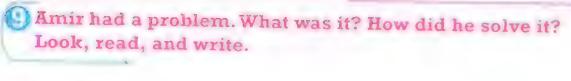
7 fiead and match

amazing - dangerous - happy - special - strange

1. At dinner, Amir wasn't very	IIAhA
2. Mariam thought that Amir's	poster was

- 3. Some of Amir's classmates thought his pet was \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. Hany reminded Amir to be careful because some reptiles are
- 5. Mr Bassam introduced Hany as a \_\_\_\_\_ guest.
- 3 Amir wrote an email to Hany to thank him. Read and complete.

1	
Dear Hany,	
Thank you very much for letting me vis	it you. I was very excited
to meet you and the reptiles!	
I found.	
I didn't know that	
	**
I really enjoyed	
And come from two and with time was not just been face that the two come with time was and come for two was the win	
Mariam liked	
It was fun in the desert near Cairo because	
I hope I can do a job like yours!	
Hany	



	What was Amir's problem?
	What was Dad's advice?
** ** ***	Who did Amir contact? Why?
	What did Mr Bassam do? How did this help?

What happened at the end? What made Youssef change his mind?:





# General Activities

تدريبات شاملة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول Activity 1

1 Choose the right	answer fron	اختر الاجابة الصحيحة من a , b, ox C:
1. Farida's favorite	is chocol	late.
lesson	<b>5</b> sport	<b>©</b> food
2. There are lots of coral.	in	
reefs 3. I'm badp	leaves laying handball.	Cloaves
o in	<b>b</b> for	<b>c</b> at
4. A: What	you like to eat?	B: I'd like koshari, please.
o is	<b>b</b> would	C were
5. I didn't to	school yesterd	ay.
<b>g</b> go	<b>b</b> went	<b>G</b> goes
2 Read and match:		اقرأ وصل:
-  A  -		B
1 Ashraf is a dentist, he	looks after	o dry in the desert.
2 I bought sunglasses		<ul><li>b. in Cairo.</li></ul>
3 He lives		© C. people's teeth.
4 It's very hot and	•	od. to get good grades.
5 Ahmed studies hard		e to wear on holiday.
Read and fill in the	he gaps:	اقرأ واملاً الفراغات:
	iving - monume	
Tourists like to visit Egypt. Some like to go		Sea.
Read the following	ng and answ	ver the quastions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة؛
		اطرا الأدل تما الجنب عن الأسليك؛

My uncle Samy takes his family to the park every Friday. There, he plays with his children. They play football. The mother makes a lot of sandwiches. They have lunch and eat ice cream. In the park, they can see birds flying and lots of flowers and trees.

### General Activities

A- Choose the right answe	er from a, b, or c:	
1. Uncle Samy plays with h	isin the po	ork.
children children	<b>brothers</b>	<b>6</b> friends
2. The mother makes		
o cakes	<b>5</b> sandwiches	c ice cream
3- Answer the following q	uestions:	
3. Where does Uncle Sam	y take his family every F	Friday?
4. What can they see in th	e park?	
		iعدت تيب الكلمات:
1. sport - favorite - My - foo	otball - is	
2. about - buying - How - g	grapes - some?	
3. pack - blue - I'll - sweat	ter - my.	
4. live - you - Do - a city - i		•
	f Five (3) sentences	using the following world
		اكتب فقرة إنشائية <mark>من خمس جم</mark>
<b>4</b> 1	ealthy and unhealthy f	
	colong and officerating t	
food - hea	lthy - chocolate - unhe	althy - fruit
Punctuate the foll  1- no he didn't	owing:	( الترقيم للاتى:
2- does samir go to school	ol on Monday	
Z- does sumingo to scribt	of the morady	

# Activity 2

### Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

- 1.I ..... do my homework .
- mustn't

- shouldn't
- **G** must
- 2. Fayoum has ..... and amazing sights.
  - 1 floods lakes

- storms
- 3.I would like.....apples, please.
- an

13 a

- C some
- 4. This ......has few ingredients.
- recipe

(D) country

- **c** suitcase
- 5.1 .....sleeping at 6 am yesterday.
  - is is

**1** was

C gre

## Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



- (i) A giant is
- "Non-living" means
- [ "Flow" is
- "Rockpool" is
- [5] "Chop" means

- the way water moves.
- © C a small area of water with rocks.

o to cut something down.

- 6 d
- something that isn't alive.
- Q e. a very, very big person.

## Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملاً الفراغات؛

### desert - lots - camels

## Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Nesreen had some old clothes, so she went shopping with her friend Omnia. At the shop, she found nice new dresses but they were very expensive, so they went back home. Nesreen was very surprised that her mother bought the dresses she wanted.

### A-Fill in the blanks with T (True) or F (False):

Nesreen bought the dresses.



The dresses were very expensive.



### B- Answer the following questions:

- 4. Who went shopping with Nesreen?

# أعد ترتيب الكلمات: Read and reorder the following to make sentences: : أعد ترتيب الكلمات

- 1. were What doing at you home yesterday?
- 2. I need Will a coat?
- 3. cars are emissions There too many from.
- 4. can't homework I my do.

# Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

### Year brouklant

8 o'clock - ful medames - bread - boiled eggs - fresh juice



# Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

- 1- what were ahmed and Fatma doing
- 2- adel and magdy are tall



# Activity 3

Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

- 1. Ali ..... the flowers in the garden.
- o drank watered
- 2. I'm good at ..... tennis.
- o doing **b** playing
- player

4. Are there .....

tomatoes in the fridge?

dentist

- · b any
- Egypt worked very hard. 5. People in .....
- Ancient

o some

New

**C** Expensive

**C** shoemaker

c ate

C not

**C** making

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

- Samir is a very
- 2 We went to the park
- 3 The air is black
- I'd like some
- 5 She went to the market

- and toxic. b. to buy some vegetables.
- © c. kind person.
- d. juice, please.
  - to play with our friends.

## Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الغراغات:

### racket - practices - prizes

My friend Amr is a tennis player. He • .....tennis in the club. He plays with tennis ball with his 😃 ......

## Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة؛

The climate changes all the time. It becomes much hotter than before. In cities, factories and transportation don't help much as they produce too many gases. We need to save our world before it gets worse. We should plant more trees and keep our planet clean.

### A-: Fill in the blanks with T (True) or F (False)

- The climate doesn't change.
- Cities are not healthy to live in.



### B- Answer the following questions:

- 3. What do factories in cities produce?
- 4. How can we help our planet?

# أعد ترتيب الكلمات: :Read and reorde: الـ المستعدد المالية الكلمات: : Read and reorde: المدترتيب الكلمات

- 1. won Hedaya gold the medal.
- 2. teacher uses My pen a green.
- 3. problem, -'s the What Tamer?
- 4. would you What like drink to?

### 6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following weather اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

### Armot

father - vet - sick - animals - help



## Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

- 1- where was nabil going
- 2- ali wasn t watching a film

# Activity 4

Choose the right	answer from a	a, b, or c: لاجابة الصحيحة	غتر ال
1. Tertiary	eat larger animals.		
producers 2.Isleeping	consumers in my bedroom at	t 10 pm yesterday.	
is 3. Monkeys are good at	trees.	c was	
<ul><li>playing</li><li>Omar is clever. He</li></ul>	does his	cooking homework.	
always 5. The soil near the Nile is	never	<b>o</b> not	
o hot	to cold	c fertile	
Read and match:		صل:	يراً ور
A castle is	o a bo	ox in which we keep animals.	
A greenhouse is	<ul><li>b. a bo</li></ul>	ad dream.	
Fertile" means	© C. a ver	ry large building built a long time ag	<b>JO</b> .
A nightmare is	o d. goo	od land to grow plants and crops.	
A cage is	⊕ e. a glo	ass building used for growing plant	ts.
Read and fill in the	ne gaps:	املاً الغراغات؛	يراً وا
	heans - healthu	- foods	

sometimes has ... for breakfast. He likes to have • ..... food all the time.

# Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة؛

Egypt is one of the world's best countries. It has many ancient monuments. The best tourist sites in Egypt are in Abu Simbel near Aswan. You can also visit the Great Temple of Ramses II, Elephantine Island, and the Island of Philae. The Great Pyramid and Sphinx at Giza are very amazing monuments to see. Tourists like to visit Egypt in winter because the weather is warm and nice.

	General Activities
A-Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:	
1. The Great Pyramid and Sphinx are at	500-4
Aswan  2. You can visit thein Aswan.	<b>G</b> Giza
Island of Philae The Great Pyramid	<b>©</b> Sphinx
B- Answer the following questions:	
1. Where is Abu Simbel?	
2. Why do tourists like to visit Egypt in winter?	
Read and reorder the following to make sen	tences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات؛
1. favorite - My - fruit - mango - is.	
2. do - you - know - Want - to?	
3. about - visiting - museum - the - 11 ///?	
4. you - Would - stay - like to - hotel - this - in?	•
Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences u	sing the following words:
نول عن: Hotidays	اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس ج
Alexandria - weather - hot - play	ning - swim
Atexandria - weather - not - plag	ing - Swiiii
Punctuate the following:	ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:
1- what s the weather like today	
2- i never go to school on friday	

# Activity (5)

1.I would like	orange, please.	
an an	<b>5</b> a	c some
2. The Red Sea	on Egypt's east coast.	
dies 3. A tourist was	lies in the Red Sea near th	c arrives e coral reefs.
sleeping 4. We useto	cooking grow vegetables.	diving
soil  5. What are the results of	b mountain climate?	lake
check	change	farming
Read and match:		وصل:
The Nile Delta is	o a on my bike.	В
Our school uniform	walking in the	e park?
I go to school	Oc. in Lower Egypt	ot.
The food	od is really sma	rt.
How about	e is delicious.	

Last month, we visited Alexandria. The 0 ...... was very nice. I took my with me. The weather was ..... and lovely.

Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hoda and Mona are sisters. They are the same age. They go to primary school. They are in grade five. Hoda is tall and healthy. She eats healthy food and she never drinks cola, but Mona likes pizza and chocolate. She also eats lots of sweets. She always goes to the dentist.

عد ترتيب الكلمات:
-4
he following words
كتب فقرة إنشائية من د
our heat
ton besself
ton best
ton معلى الترقيم للات

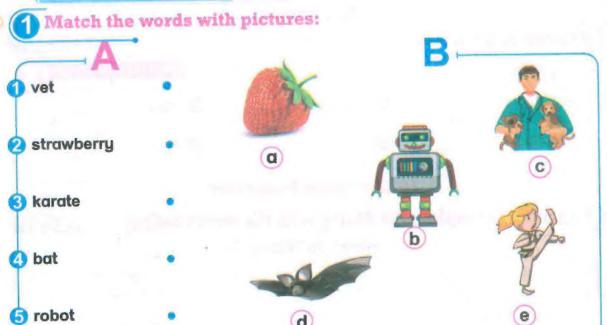
# Al Azhar Activity 6

	A- Listening	
Listen and choos	se:	استمع واختر؛
•		نعس الاستماع اخر الكتاب
1. Youssef is	years old.	
ten 2. His father is a	eleven	c twelve
doctor	<b>b</b> vet	co teacher
	B- Language Functions	
Read and compl	ete the dialog with the wo	
a read and compa	father - with - Alexandria	
Where are you g	oing ?	
Who is going		you?
B : My		
	C- Reading	
		أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة: :ns:
	g text and answer the question her in Egypt. It's hot in summer, a	
1. We have	weather in Egypt.	(bad - nice - worse) (cold - warm - hot) prees. (40 - 30 - 50)
g. The temperature	D- The Reader	
	e (True) or (False):	اقبأ وأكتب مح أه خطا
4) Read and writ	e (True) or (raise).	True False
		DEFENDANCE DEPENDENCE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY
Hany says the	at all reptiles are dangerous.	
Mariam finds	a blue gecko on a rock.	
	E- Usage	
6 Choose the ri	ght answer from a, b, or	ختر الاجابة الصحيحة 😮 🕻
1. I go to the park to	football.	
playing .	- nlau	c plays
	sland is in	
Cairo	Alexandria	Aswan

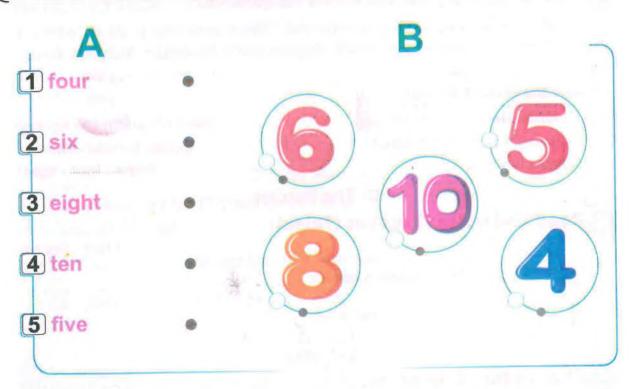
# Al Azhar Activity 7

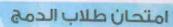
	A- Listenin	g	
1 Listen and cl	loose:		يتمِع واختر:
1. The Nile Delta i	s in Lower	ير الكتاب	نص الاستماع ا
England	Egypt very	C Libya	
cold	<b>b</b> warm	<b>c</b> hot	
	B- Language Fun	ctions	
Read and cor	nplete the dialog with t	he words below	يرأ وأكمل:
1	home - do - sun		يرا واحمن:
It was hot and : What did you	weather like last Friday?		
- 13 taged at -	C- Reading		
	ring text and answer the		
	dria Library last	(dogs - h	mmer - spring orses - camels rs - hair - eyes
	D- The Reade	er	na beeds E
Read and wa	ite (True) or (False):	م خطأ:	قرأ وأكتب صح أد True False
Hany gave (	talk at Amir's school.		J. Land Company (1564 1992) 1997 1997 1997 1997 1997 1997 1997 199
Amir invited	Youssef to feed Lizzy.		
	E- Usage		
Choose the r	ight answer from a, l	b, or c: aais	ختر الاجابة الصد
	from trees.		, , - ,
a stars	<b>5</b> furniture to school on Friday.	c gold	SAD - IT C
o go	<b>b</b> goes	c going	

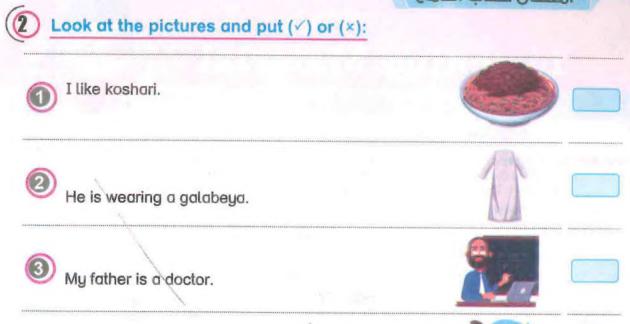


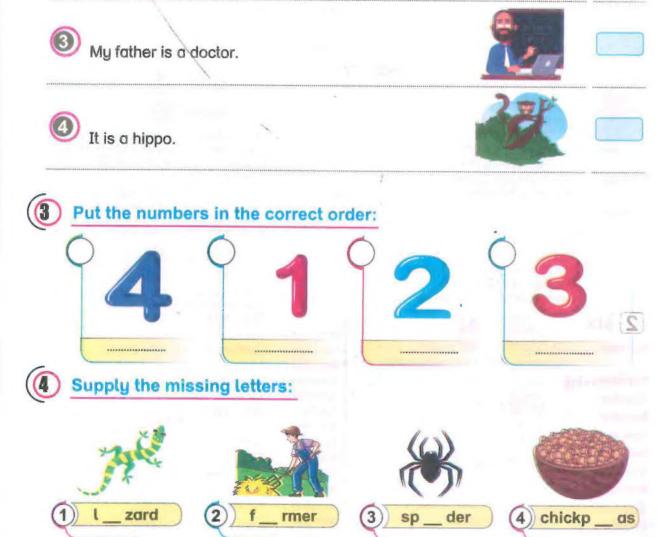


## Match the words with pictures:









# Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب

### LET'S REMEMBER

Narrator: Let's remember, Lesson 1 Exercise 2. Complete the table with the words in

Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say

Speaker: Social media

password cell phone text message do research

Transportation

tram metro boat taxi

Environment

traffic flood pollution drought



### LESSON 2

Unit 1, Lesson 2, Exercise 4, Listen

and circle the correct words

Speaker: This is called a 'food chain'. It shows how

plants and animals get their energy. At the start of the chain, we can see plants. These are called producers. They get energy from the sun. Animals do not get their energy from the sun. Animals eat plants or other animals for energy.

LESSON



Narrator: Unit 1, Lesson 4, Exercise 1. Listen

and check. Then listen and repeat

Narrator: 1

Speaker: cake

Narrator: Speaker: lime

Narrator: 3 Speaker:

Narrator: 4

Speaker: grape

Narrator: 5 Speaker: egg

Narrator:

Speaker: milk Narrator: 7

Speaker: rice F irrator:

Speaker: candy

Narrator: Unit 1, Lesson 4, Exercise 3, Read. Then listen and complete

Narrator: 1

Speaker: I say, "Let's play!"

Narrator: 2

Speaker: Let's bake a cake

Narrator: 3

Speaker: Snails have tails.

## Unit (2)

### **LESSON**



Unit 2, Lesson 2, Exercise 4. Look and

listen. Match the people to what they are good or bad at. Write D (Dalia), A

(Aser) or S (Salma)

Dalia: Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.

Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis and he's bad at helping me in the

Mu sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!

Unit 2, Lesson 3, Exercise 1. Complete Narrator:

with the words in the box. Then listen and check

Narrator:

Speaker: football pitch

2 Narrator:

Speaker: karate suit

Narrator: 3

Speaker: tennis court

Narrator: 4

Speaker: swimming pool

5 Narrator:

Speaker: football boots

Narrator:

Speaker: tennis ball

Narrator: 7

Speaker: squash rackets

Narrator: 8

Speaker: swimming goggles

LESSON



Narrator: Unit 2, Lesson 3, Exercise 3. Listen

and say. Then listen and write

Narrator:

Narrator: 2 Speaker: cat

Narrator: 3 Speaker: sock

Speaker: neck

Narrator: 4 Speaker: doll

Narrator: Speaker: fish Narrator: 6

Speaker: \ sun

words. Then listen and say





Listen and check (/) the words with long vowel sounds cry-full-make-cone-cube-feet

## Unit





Narrator: Listen and write. Then listen and repeat

Speaker: The king sat on his throne eating

strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream.

A strong man came to hetp.

### Unit (6)

Write the words in the box in the correct place. Listen and check: usually- often-sometimes

Unit 6, Lesson 4, Exercise 6, Listen and write. Then read aloud

Speaker: He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky - he had a knife, so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours

later, people came to save him!

## Review 2

### LESSON



Review 2, Lesson 1, Exercise 1, Listen Narrator: and point

Narrator:

Speaker: waterfall

2 Narrator: Speaker: reporter

Narrator:

Speaker: sneakers

Narrator: 4

Speaker: lake Narrator:

Speaker: rainbow

Narrator: 6 Speaker: cloudu

Narrator: Speaker: dentist

Narrator: 8 Speaker: mountain

Narrator: Speaker: snow Narrator:

Speaker: scientist 11 Narrator:

Speaker: island 12 Narrator: Speaker: ice

13 Narrator: Speaker:

Narrator: Speaker: grasshopper

Narrator: Speaker: forest

# الأزهر الشريف

### Unit (1) 1. Listen and choose:

1: Ibrahim and his mom buy vegetables.

2: In the morning, I like o drink milk.

### Unit (2

1: Monkeys are good at climbing trees.

2: Football is my favorite sport.

### Unit (3

1: Galabayas are mode from cotton.

2: Most men and boys were galabayas in Eid.

### Unit (4)

1: Hani was sleeping at 6 am.

2: Rasha planted flowers the garden. Unit (5)

### 1: plants need sunlight and water.

2: Walid looks after hippos.



1. Egypt is hot summer. 2. We cook in the kitchen.

Activitu 1 1: Youssef is 12 years old.

2: His father is doctor.

1: The Nile Delta is in lower Egypt.

2: The summer is very hot.